Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English

With answers

Raymond Murphy
Contents

To the student
To the teacher
Thanks

Unit

1 am/is/are
2 am/is/are (questions)
3 I am doing (present continuous)
4 are you doing? (present continuous questions)
5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)
6 I don’t ... (present simple negative)
7 Do you ... ? (present simple questions)
8 I am doing and I do (present continuous and present simple)
9 I have ... / I’ve got ...
10 was/were
11 worked/got/went etc. (past simple)
12 I didn’t ... Did you ... ? (past simple negative and questions)
13 I was doing (past continuous)
14 I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)
15 I have done (present perfect 1)
16 I’ve just ... I’ve already ... I haven’t ... yet (present perfect 2)
17 Have you ever ... ? (present perfect 3)
18 How long have you ... ? (present perfect 4)
19 for since ago
20 I have done (present perfect) and I did (past simple)
21 is done was done (passive 1)
22 is being done has been done (passive 2)
23 be/have/do in present and past tenses
24 Regular and irregular verbs
25 I used to ...
26 What are you doing tomorrow?
27 I’m going to ...
28 will/shall (1)
29 will/shall (2)
30 might
31 can and could
32 must mustn’t needn’t
33 should
34 I have to ...
35 Would you like ... ? I’d like ...
36 there is there are
37 there was/were there has/have been there will be
38 It ...
39 I am I don't etc.
40 Have you? Are you? Don’t you? etc.
41 too/either so am I / neither do I etc.
42 isn’t haven’t don’t etc. (negatives)
43 is it ... ? have you ... ? do they ... ? etc. (questions 1)
44 Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)
45 Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)
46 What ... ? Which ... ? How ... ?
47 How long does it take ... ?
48 Do you know where ... ? I don’t know what ... etc.
49 She said that ... He told me that ...
50 work/working go-going do-doing
to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)
52 I want you to ... I told you to ...
53 I went to the shop to ...
54 go to ... go on ... go for ... go -ing
get
56 do and make
57 have
58 I/me he/him they/them etc.
59 my/his/their etc.
60 Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.
61 I/me/my/mine
62 myself/yourself/themselves etc.
63 ’s (Ann’s camera / my brother’s car) etc.
64 a/an ...
65 flower(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)
66 a car / some money (countable/uncountable 1)
67 a car / some money (countable/uncountable 2)
68 a/an and the
69 the ...
70 go to work / go home / go to the cinema
71 I like music I hate exams
72 the ... (names of places)
73 this/that/these/those
74 one/ones
75 some and any
76 not + any no none
77 not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing
78 somebody/anything/nowhere etc.
79 every and all
80 all most some any no/none
81 both either neither
82 a lot much many
83 (a) little (a) few
old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)
quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)
old/older expensive / more expensive
older than ... more expensive than ...
not as ... as
the oldest the most expensive
enough
too
He speaks English very well. (word order 1)
always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)
still yet already
Give me that book! Give it to me!
at 8 o'clock on Monday in April
from ... to until since for
before after during while
in at on (places 1)
in at on (places 2)
to in at (places 3)
under behind opposite etc. (prepositions)
up over through etc. (prepositions)
on at by with about (prepositions)
afraid of ... good at ... etc. preposition + -ing (good at -ing etc.)
listen to ... look at ... etc. (verb + preposition)
go in fall off run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)
put on your shoes put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)
and but or so because
When ...
If we go ... If you see ... etc.
If I had ... If we went ... etc.
a person who ... a thing that/which ... (relative clauses 1)
the people we met the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)

Appendices
Appendix 1 Active and passive 239
Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs 240
Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups 241
Appendix 4 Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.) 242
Appendix 5 Spelling 244
Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (look out / take off etc.) 246
Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (fill in a form / put out a fire etc.) 247

Additional exercises 248

Key to Exercises 265
Key to Additional exercises 293

Index 296
To the student (working without a teacher)

This is a grammar book for elementary students of English. There are 114 units in the book and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book (Contents).

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you need to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect (I have been, he has done etc.), use the Index (at the back of the book) to find the unit (or units) you need to study (Units 15-20 for the present perfect).

Each unit is two pages. The information is on the left-hand page and the exercises are on the right:

You can use the book in this way:

1. Look in the Contents and/or Index to find the unit that you need.
2. Study the left-hand page (information).
3. Do the exercises on the right-hand page.
4. Use the Key to check your answers.
5. Study the left-hand page again if necessary.

Don't forget the seven Appendices at the back of the book (pages 239-247). These will give you information about active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.

There are also Additional exercises at the back of the book (pages 248-264). There is a list of these exercises on page 248.
To the teacher

The most important features of this book are:

- It is a grammar book. It deals only with grammar and is not a general course book.
- It is a book for elementary learners. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at elementary level.
- It combines reference and exercises in one volume.
- It can be used for self-study or as supplementary course material.

Organisation of the book

There are 114 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organised in grammatical categories, such as tenses, questions and articles. Units are not ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should not be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the Contents and there is a comprehensive Index at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The grammar point is presented and explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are seven Appendices (pages 239-247) dealing with active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students’ attention to these. This new edition of Essential Grammar in Use also contains a set of Additional exercises (pages 248-264). These exercises provide ‘mixed’ practice bringing together grammar points from a number of different units (mainly those concerning verb forms). There are 33 exercises in this section and there is a full list on page 248.

Finally, there is a Key at the back of the book (pages 265-295) for students to check their answers. An edition without the Key is also available for teachers who would prefer their students to use this.

Level

The book is for elementary learners, i.e. learners with very little English, but I would not expect it to be used from the first day of a course for complete beginners. It is intended mainly for elementary students who are beyond the very earliest stages of a beginners’ course. It could also be used by lower intermediate learners whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of ‘elementary’ grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the elementary learner and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.

Using the book

The book can be used by students working alone (see To the student) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as an elementary grammar book.
When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help and practice.

In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (presentation and explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written for individual study and reference. In most cases, it would probably be better for the teacher to present the grammar point in his/her preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

Some teachers may prefer to keep the book for revision and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study and practice.

**Changes from the first edition**

The main changes from the first edition are:

- There are six new units:
  - Unit 16 present perfect + just/already/yet
  - Unit 22 passive (is being done / has been done)
  - Unit 25 I used to …
  - Unit 56 do and make
  - Unit 57 have
  - Unit 112 if I had … / if we went… etc.

There is also a new appendix on active and passive forms (Appendix 1).

- Some of the material has been revised and reorganised. For example, the content of Units 99-100 (in/at/on) in the new edition corresponds to Unit 94 and part of Unit 96 in the old edition.

- Some units have been redesigned, for example Unit 41 (originally 39) and Unit 54 (originally 52).

- Some of the units have been reordered and (after Unit 8) nearly all units have a different number from the original edition. A few units have been moved to different parts of the book. For example, Unit 50 (work/working etc.) was originally Unit 34.

- Many of the left-hand pages have been rewritten and many of the examples changed. In a few cases there are significant changes to the content, for example Unit 51 (originally 47), Unit 73 (originally 68) and Unit 82 (originally 77).

- Many of the original exercises have been modified or completely replaced with new exercises (for example, Units 4 and 5).

- There is a new section of *Additional exercises* at the back of the book (see *Organisation of the book* above).
Thanks

For their help in producing this new edition of *Essential Grammar in Use*, I would like to thank Jeanne McCartney, Nóirín Burke, Liz Driscoll, Chris Hamilton-Emery, Geraldine Mark, Jane Walsh, Pam Murphy, Ruth Carim and Lelio Pallini.

Drawings by Richard Deverell, Richard Eckford, Sue Hillwood-Harris and Amanda MacPhail.

Book design by Peter Ducker MSTD.
A

My name is Lisa.
I’m American. I’m from Chicago.
I’m 22.
I’m not married.
My favourite colour is blue.
My favourite sports are football and swimming.
I’m a student.
My father is a doctor and my mother is a journalist.
I’m interested in art.

B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am (I’m)</td>
<td>I am not (I’m not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>(he’s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>(she’s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>(it’s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>(we’re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>(you’re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>(they’re)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C

that’s = that is there’s = there is here’s = here is

- I’m cold. Can you close the window, please?
- I’m 32 years old. My sister is 29.
- My brother is very tall. He’s a policeman.
- John is afraid of dogs.
- It’s ten o’clock. You’re late again.
- Ann and I are good friends.
- Your keys are on the table.
- I’m tired but I’m not hungry.
- Tom isn’t interested in politics. He’s interested in music.
- Jane isn’t at home at the moment. She’s at work.
- Those people aren’t English. They’re Australian.
- It’s sunny today but it isn’t warm.

that’s = that is there’s = there is here’s = here is

- Thank you. That’s very kind of you.
- Look! There’s Chris.
- ‘Here’s your key.’ ‘Thank you.’
EXERCISES

1.1 Write the short form (she’s / we aren’t etc.).

1 she is __ she’s__
2 they are __
3 it is not __
4 that is __
5 I am not __
6 you are not __

1.2 Put in am, is or are.

1 The weather __ nice today.
2 I __ not tired.
3 This bag __ heavy.
4 These bags __ heavy.
5 Look! There __ Carol.
6 My brother and I __ good tennis players.
7 Ann __ at home. Her children __ at school.
8 I __ a taxi driver. My sister __ a nurse.

1.3 Write full sentences. Use is/isn’t/are/aren’t.

1 (your shoes very dirty) Your shoes are very dirty. not clean
2 (my brother a teacher) My __
3 (this house not very big) __
4 (the shops not open today) __
5 (my keys in my bag) __
6 (Jenny 18 years old) __
7 (you not very tall) __

1.4 Look at Lisa’s sentences (Unit 1A). Now write sentences about yourself.

1 (name?) My __
2 (from?) I __
3 (age?) I __
4 (job?) I __
5 (married?) I __
6 (favourite colour or colours?) My __
7 (interested in...?) I __

1.5 Write sentences for the pictures. Use: afraid angry cold hot hungry thirsty

1 __ She’s thirsty.
2 __ They __
3 He __
4 __
5 __

1.6 Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use am / am not / is / isn’t / are / aren’t.

1 (I / interested in politics) I’m interested (OR I’m not interested) in politics.
2 (I / hungry) I __
3 (it / warm today) It __
4 (I / afraid of dogs) __
5 (my hands / cold) __
6 (Canada / a very big country) __
7 (diamonds / cheap) __
8 (I / interested in football) __
9 (Rome / in Spain) __
am/is/are (questions)

UNIT 2

A positive question

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am</th>
<th>am I?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>we?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'Am I late?' 'No, you're on time.'
- 'Is your mother at home?' 'No, she's out.'
- 'Are your parents at home?' 'No, they're out.'
- 'Is it cold in your room?' 'Yes, a little.'
- 'Your shoes are nice. Are they new?'

We say:
- Is she at home? / Is your mother at home? (not 'Is at home your mother?')
- Are they new? / Are your shoes new? (not 'Are new your shoes?')

B Where ...? / What ...? / Who ...? / How ...? / Why ...?

- Where is your mother? Is she at home?
- What colour is your car? 'It's red.'
- How are your parents? Are they well?
- How much are these postcards? 'Fifty pence.'

What's = what is who's = who is how's = how is where's = where is
- What's the time?  
- Who's that man?  
- Where's Jill?  
- How's your father?

C short answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes, I am.</th>
<th>No, I'm not.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>he's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>she's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>we're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they're</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I'm not but I'm thirsty.'
- 'Is your friend English?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Are these your keys?' 'Yes, they are.'
- 'That's my seat. 'No, it isn't.'
EXERCISES

2.1 Find the right answers for the questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. Is your car blue?</td>
<td>B. No, I'm not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Is Linda from London?</td>
<td>C. Yes, you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. What colour is your bag?</td>
<td>F. No, it's black.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. How is George?</td>
<td>H. No, she's American.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2 Make questions with these words. Use is or are.

1. (at home / your mother?) Is your mother at home?
2. (your parents / well?) Are your parents well?
3. (interesting / your job?) Is your job interesting?
4. (the shops / open today?) Are the shops open today?
5. (interested in sport / you?) Are you interested in sport?
6. (near here / the post office?) Is the post office near here?
7. (at school / your children?) Are your children at school?
8. (why / you / late?) Why are you late?

2.3 Complete the questions. Use What... / Who... / Where... / How...

1. How are your parents? They're very well.
2. Where's the bus stop? At the end of the street.
4. How much are these oranges? £1.20 a kilo.
7. What colour are your new shoes? Black.

2.4 Write the questions. (Read the answers first.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. (name?) What's your name? Paul.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. (married or single?) Are you married? No, I'm married.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. (American?) Are you American? No, I'm Australian.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. (how old?) How old are you? I'm 30.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. (a teacher?) Is she a teacher? No, she's a lawyer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. (wife a lawyer?) Is he a lawyer? No, she's a designer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. (from?) Are you from Italy? Yes, she's Italian.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. (her name?) What's her name? Anna.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. (how old?) How old is she? She's 27.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.5 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn't. etc.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Are you married? Yes, I am.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Are you thirsty? No, I'm not.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Is it cold today? Yes, it is.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Are your hands cold? Yes, they are.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Is it dark now? Yes, it is.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Are you a teacher? Yes, I am.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I am doing (present continuous)

A

She’s eating.
She isn’t reading.

It’s raining.
The sun isn’t shining.

They’re running.
They aren’t walking.

The present continuous is:
am/is/are + doing/eating/running/writing etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am/is/are</th>
<th>-ing</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am (not)</td>
<td>I’m working.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>is (not)</td>
<td>Chris is writing a letter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>is (not)</td>
<td>She isn’t eating. (or She’s not eating.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>is (not)</td>
<td>The phone is ringing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are (not)</td>
<td>We’re having dinner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are (not)</td>
<td>You’re not listening to me. (or You aren’t ...)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>are (not)</td>
<td>The children are doing their homework.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B

am/is/are + -ing = something is happening now:

I’m working
she’s wearing a hat
they’re playing football
I’m not watching television

past         NOW         future

• Please be quiet. I’m working. (= I’m working now)
• Look at Sue! She’s wearing her new hat. (= she is wearing it now)
• The weather is nice at the moment. It’s not raining.
• ‘Where are the children?’ ‘They’re playing in the park.’
• (on the phone) We’re having dinner now. Can you phone again later?
• You can turn off the television. I’m not watching it.

Spelling (⇒ Appendix 5):
come → coming     write → writing     dance → dancing
run → running     sit → sitting      swim → swimming
lie → lying
### EXERCISES

#### 3.1
What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:

- eat
- have
- lie
- play
- sit
- wait

1. **She's eating** an apple.
2. He **is waiting** for a bus.
3. They **is playing** football.
4. **She is sitting** on the floor.
5. **He is having** breakfast.
6. **They are sitting** on the table.

#### 3.2
Complete the sentences. Use one of these verbs:

- build
- cook
- go
- have
- stand
- stay
- swim
- work

1. Please be quiet. I'm **working**...
2. ‘Where’s John?’ ‘He’s in the kitchen. He **is working**...’
3. ‘You** are standing** on my foot.’ ‘Oh, I’m sorry.’
4. Look! Somebody **is swimming** in the river.
5. We’re here on holiday. We **are standing** at the Central Hotel.
6. ‘Where’s Ann?’ ‘She **is having a shower**.’
7. They **are building** a new theatre in the city centre at the moment.
8. I **am working** now. Goodbye.

#### 3.3
Look at the picture. Write sentences about Jane. Use *She's -ing or She isn't -ing.*

1. (have dinner) **Jane isn't having dinner**.
2. (watch television) **She's watching television**.
3. (sit on the floor) **She is sitting**
4. (read a book) **She is reading**
5. (play the piano) **She is playing**
6. (laugh) **She is laughing**
7. (wear a hat) **She is wearing**
8. (write a letter) **She is writing**

#### 3.4
What's happening at the moment? Write true sentences.

1. (I / wash / my hair) **I'm not washing my hair**.
2. (it / snow) **It's snowing**. OR **It isn't snowing**.
3. (I / sit / on a chair)
4. (I / eat)
5. (it / rain)
6. (I / learn / English)
7. (I / listen / to music)
8. (the sun / shine)
9. (I / wear / shoes)
10. (I / read / a newspaper)
are you doing? (present continuous questions)

A positive | question
---|---
I am doing | am I doing?
he is | he is doing?
working | working?
going | going?
(staying | (staying?
| etc.
we are | we are doing?
you they are
are | are doing?

- 'Are you feeling OK?' 'Yes, I'm fine, thank you.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'Yes, take an umbrella.'
- Why are you wearing a coat? It's not cold.
- 'What's Paul doing?' 'He's reading the newspaper.'
- 'What are the children doing?' 'They're watching television.'
- Look, there's Sally! Where's she going?
- Who are you waiting for? Are you waiting for Sue?

B Study the word order:

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>working today?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>working today?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where are they going?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where are those people going?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C short answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes, I am.</th>
<th>No, I'm not.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes, he is.</td>
<td>No, he's not. or No, he isn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, she it</td>
<td>No, she's not. or No, it isn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, we you they are.</td>
<td>No, we're not. or No, they aren't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'Are you going now?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Is Paul working today?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'No, it isn't.'
- 'Are your friends staying at a hotel?' 'No, they aren't. They're staying with me.'
4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.

1. Are you watching it?
   Yes, see you tomorrow.

2. Are you going now?
   No, you can turn it off.

3. Are you enjoying the film?
   Yes, it's very funny.

4. Is it raining?
   No, not at the moment.

5. Is that clock working?
   No, it's broken.

6. Are you writing a letter?
   Yes, to my sister.

4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use one of these:
cry eat go laugh look at read

1. Where are you reading?
2. Where is she?
3. What is she doing?
4. Why?
5. What?
6. Why?

4.3 Write questions from these words. Use is or are and put the words in order.

1. Is Paul working today?
2. What are the children doing?
3. What are you listening to?
4. Where are you going your friends?
5. What are you cooking Ann?
6. What are you looking at me?
7. What are you sitting on the floor?
8. Are you feeling well?

4.4 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn't. etc.)

1. Are you watching TV? No, I'm not.
2. Are you wearing a watch?
3. Are you eating something?
4. Is it raining?
5. Are you sitting on the floor?
6. Are you feeling well?
I do/work/like etc. (present simple)

A

They’re looking at their books. They read a lot.

He’s eating an ice-cream. He likes ice-cream.

Remember:

he works / she lives / it rains etc.

- I work in a shop. My brother works in a bank. (not ‘My brother work’)
- It rains a lot in winter.

I have → he/she/it has:
- John has a shower every day.

Spelling (⇒ Appendix 5):
- -es after -s / -sh / -ch: pass → passes finish → finishes watch → watches
- -y → -ies: study → studies try → tries
- also: do → does go → goes

B

We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:
- I like big cities.
- The shops open at 9 o’clock and close at 5.30.
- Tim works very hard. He starts at 7.30 and finishes at 8 o’clock in the evening.
- The Earth goes round the Sun.
- We do a lot of different things in our free time.
- It costs a lot of money to stay at luxury hotels.

C

always/never/often/sometimes/usually + present simple
- Sue always arrives at work early. (not ‘Sue arrives always’)
- I usually go to work by car but sometimes I walk. (not ‘I go usually’)
- Julia never eats breakfast.
- Tom lives near us. We often see him.
EXERCISES

5.1 Write these verbs + -s or -es.

1. (read) she reads.  
2. (think) he thinks.  
3. (fly) it flies.  
4. (dance) he dances.  
5. (have) she has.  
6. (finish) it finishes.

5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs:

- eat  - go  - live  - play  - play  - sleep

1. He plays the piano.
2. They live in a very big house.
3. They eat a lot of fruit.
4. She plays tennis.
5. He goes to the cinema a lot.
6. He sleeps eight hours a night.

5.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:

- boil  - close  - cost  - cost  - like  - like  - meet  - open  - speak  - teach  - wash

1. Margaret speaks four languages.
2. In Britain the banks usually close at 9.30 in the morning.
3. The City Museum is closed at 5 o’clock in the evening.
4. Tina is a teacher. She likes mathematics to young children.
5. My job is very interesting. I meet a lot of people.
6. Peter washes his hair twice a week.
7. Food is expensive. It costs a lot of money.
8. Shoes are expensive. They cost a lot of money.
9. Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.
10. Julia and I are good friends. I meet her and she meets me.

5.4 Write sentences from these words. Put the verb in the right form (arrive or arrives etc.).

1. (always / early / Sue / arrive) Sue always arrives early.
2. (basketball / I / play / often) I play basketball often.
3. (work / Margaret / hard / usually) Margaret works hard usually.
4. (Jenny / always / nice clothes / wear) Jenny always wears nice clothes.
5. (dinner / we / have / always / at 7.30) We always have dinner at 7.30.
7. (like / chocolate / children / usually) Children usually like chocolate.

5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use always/never/often/sometimes/usually.

1. (watch television) I never watch television. I usually watch television in the evening. (etc.)
2. (read in bed) I never read in bed. I usually read in bed in the evening. (etc.)
3. (get up before 7 o’clock) I never get up before 7 o’clock. I usually get up before 7 o’clock. (etc.)
4. (go to work/school by bus) I never go to work/school by bus. I usually go to work/school by bus. (etc.)
5. (drink coffee) I never drink coffee. I usually drink coffee in the evening. (etc.)
I don’t … (present simple negative)

A The present simple negative is don’t/doesn’t + verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I work</td>
<td>I do not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we like</td>
<td>work does not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you do</td>
<td>do not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they have</td>
<td>work like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he likes</td>
<td>he does not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she has</td>
<td>she doesn’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it does not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I drink coffee but I don’t drink tea.
- Sue drinks tea but she doesn’t drink coffee.
- You don’t work very hard.
- We don’t watch television very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It doesn’t rain very often.
- Gerry and Linda don’t know many people.

B Remember:

I/we/you/they don’t …
  he/she/it doesn’t …

- I don’t like football.
- He doesn’t like football.
- I don’t like Fred and Fred doesn’t like me. (not ‘Fred don’t like’)
- My car doesn’t use much petrol. (not ‘My car don’t use’)
- Sometimes he is late but it doesn’t happen very often.

C We use don’t/doesn’t + infinitive (don’t like / doesn’t speak / doesn’t do etc.):

- I don’t like washing the car. I don’t do it very often.
- Sandra speaks Spanish but she doesn’t speak Italian. (not ‘doesn’t speaks’)
- Bill doesn’t do his job very well. (not ‘Bill doesn’t his job’)
- Paula doesn’t usually have breakfast. (not ‘doesn’t … has’)

[20] I do/work/like etc. (present simple) ⇒  Unit 5 Do you …? (present simple questions) ⇒  Unit 7
# EXERCISES

## 6.1 Write the negative.

1. I play the piano very well.  
   I don't play the piano very well.
2. Jane plays the piano very well.  
   Jane
3. They know my phone number.  
   
4. We work very hard.  
   
5. He has a bath every day.  
   
6. You do the same thing every day.  
   
## 6.2 Study the information and write sentences with like.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 classical music?</th>
<th>Carol</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Bill and Rose like classical music.
   Carol
   I

2. Bill and Rose
   Carol
   I

3. 
   
4. 
   
## 6.3 Write about yourself. Use: I never ... or I often ... or I don’t ... very often.

1. (watch TV) I don't watch TV very often. (OR I never... OR I often ...)
2. (go to the theatre)
3. (ride a bicycle)
4. (eat in restaurants)
5. (travel by train)

## 6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use don’t/doesn’t + one of these verbs:

- cost
- go
- know
- read
- see
- use
- wear

1. I buy a newspaper every day but sometimes I don’t read it.
2. Paul has a car but he doesn’t use it very often.
3. They like films but they don’t go to the cinema very often.
4. Amanda is married but she doesn’t wear a ring.
5. I don’t know much about politics. I’m not interested in it.
6. It’s not an expensive hotel. It doesn’t cost much to stay there.
7. Brian lives near us but we don’t see him very often.

## 6.5 Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

1. Margaret speaks four languages — English, French, German and Spanish. (speak)
2. I don’t like my job. It’s very boring. (like)
3. ‘Where’s Martin?’ ‘I’m sorry. I don’t know.’ (know)
4. Sue is a very quiet person. She talks very much. (talk)
5. Jim drinks a lot of tea. It’s his favourite drink. (drink)
6. It’s not true! I believe it! (believe)
7. That’s a very beautiful picture. I like it very much. (like)
8. Mark is a vegetarian. He eats meat. (eat)
Do you … ? (present simple questions)

A We use do/does in present simple questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I work</td>
<td>I do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you like</td>
<td>you like?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she he does have</td>
<td>she he does have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like</td>
<td>do?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I do/work/like etc. ⇒ UNIT 5  I don’t … (negative) ⇒ UNIT 6  questions ⇒ UNITS 43-46

B Study the word order:

do/does + subject + infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where</th>
<th>How often</th>
<th>How much</th>
<th>What</th>
<th>Do</th>
<th>Does</th>
<th>always/usually/often</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you your friends work?</td>
<td>Do Chris your parents live?</td>
<td>Does your sister this word like?</td>
<td>Do you always wash your hair?</td>
<td>Do your parents often speak English?</td>
<td>Does George usually play tennis?</td>
<td>What do you mean?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the evening?</td>
<td>near here?</td>
<td>tennis?</td>
<td>your hair?</td>
<td>tennis?</td>
<td>at weekends?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions with always/usually/often:

What do you do? = What’s your job?
- ‘What do you do?’ ‘I work in a bank.’

C Remember:

do I/we/you/they …
does he/she/it …

Do they like music?
Does he like music?

D short answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes,</th>
<th>I/we/you/they do.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it does.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No,</th>
<th>I/we/you/they don’t.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it doesn’t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- ‘Do you play tennis?’ ‘No, I don’t.’
- ‘Do your parents speak English?’ ‘Yes, they do.’
- ‘Does George work hard?’ ‘Yes, he does.’
- ‘Does your sister live in London?’ ‘No, she doesn’t.’
EXERCISES

7.1 Write questions with Do ...? and Does ...?

1. I like chocolate. And you?
2. I play tennis. And you?
3. Tom plays tennis. And Ann?
4. You live near here. And your friends?
5. You speak English. And your brother?
6. I do exercises every morning. And you?
7. Sue often goes away. And Paul?
8. I want to be famous. And you?
9. You work hard. And Linda?

7.2 Write questions. Use the words in brackets (...) + do/does. Put the words in the right order.

1. (where / live / your parents?)
2. (you / early / always / get up?)
3. (how often / TV / you / watch?)
4. (you / want / what / for dinner?)
5. (like / you / football?)
6. (your brother / like / football?)
7. (what / you / do / in the evenings?)
8. (your sister / work / where?)
9. (to the cinema / often / you / go?)
10. (what / mean / this word?)
11. (often / snow / it / here?)
12. (go / usually / to bed / what time / you?)
13. (how much / to phone New York / it / cost?)
14. (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what?)

7.3 Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do do enjoy go like start teach work

1. What do you do? I work in a bookshop.
2. What time it? It's OK.
3. What time in the morning? At 9 o'clock.
5. How to work? Usually by bus.
6. And your husband. What? He's a teacher.
8. What? Yes, he loves it.

7.4 Write short answers (Yes, he does. / No, I don't. etc.).

1. Do you watch TV a lot? No, I don't. OR Yes, I do.
2. Do you live in a big city?
3. Do you often ride a bicycle?
4. Does it rain a lot where you live?
5. Do you play the piano?
I am doing and I do
(present continuous and present simple)

A

Jim is watching television.
He is not playing the guitar.

But Jim has a guitar.
He often plays it and he plays very well.

Jim plays the guitar
but he is not playing the guitar now.

Is he playing the guitar? No, he isn’t. (present continuous)
Does he play the guitar? Yes, he does. (present simple)

B

Present continuous (I am doing) – now, at the time of speaking:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Now</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Please be quiet. I’m working. (not ‘I work’)
- Tom is having a shower at the moment. (not ‘Tom has’)
- Take an umbrella with you. It’s raining.
- You can turn off the television. I’m not watching it.
- Why are you under the table? What are you doing?

C

Present simple (I do) – in general, all the time or sometimes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Now</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- I work every day from 9 o’clock to 5.30.
- Tom has a shower every morning.
- It rains a lot in winter.
- I don’t watch television very often.
- What do you usually do at the weekend?

D

We do not use these verbs in the present continuous (I am -ing):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>like</th>
<th>love</th>
<th>want</th>
<th>know</th>
<th>understand</th>
<th>remember</th>
<th>depend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>hate</td>
<td>need</td>
<td>mean</td>
<td>believe</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use the present simple only with these verbs (I want / do you like? etc.):

- I’m tired. I want to go home. (not ‘I’m wanting’)
- ‘Do you know that girl?’ ‘Yes, but I don’t remember her name.’
- I don’t understand. What do you mean?
EXERCISES

8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.

1. Does he take photographs? Yes, he does. What is he doing? He's having a bath.
2. Is she driving a bus? Does she drive a bus? What is she doing?
3. Does he clean windows? Is he cleaning a window? What is he doing?
4. Are they teaching? Do they teach? What do they do?

8.2 Put in am/is/are or do/don't/does/doesn't.

1. Excuse me, do you speak English?
2. ‘Where’s Ann?’ ‘I don’t know.’
3. What’s funny? Why are you laughing?
4. ‘What’s your sister do?’ ‘She’s a dentist.’
5. It’s raining. I don’t want to go out in the rain.
6. ‘Where do you come from?’ ‘Canada.’
7. How much does it cost to phone Canada?
8. George is a good tennis player but he doesn’t play very often.

8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (I am doing) or the present simple (I do).

1. Excuse me. Do you speak (you/speak) English?
2. ‘Where’s Tom?’ ‘He’s having (he/have) a shower.’
3. I don’t watch (I/not/watch) television very often.
4. Listen! Somebody’s singing (sing).
5. Sandra is tired. She (she/want) to go home now.
6. How often do you read (you/read) a newspaper?
7. ‘Excuse me but you’re sitting (you/sit) in my place.’ ‘Oh, I’m sorry.’
8. I’m sorry, I don’t understand. Can you speak more slowly?
9. It’s late. I’m going (I/go) home now. Can you come (you/come) with me?
10. What time does your father (your father/finish) work in the evenings?
11. You can turn off the radio. I don’t listen (I/not/listen) to it.
12. ‘Where’s Paul?’ ‘In the kitchen.’ He’s cooking (he/cook) something.
13. Martin usually drives (not/usually/drive) to work. He sometimes walks (usually/walk).
14. Sue doesn’t like coffee. She prefers tea. (she/prefer) tea.
I have ... / I've got ...

A
You can say I have or I've got, he has or he's got:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>OR</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>have got</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I've got blue eyes. (or I have blue eyes.)
- Tim has got two sisters. (or Tim has two sisters.)
- Our car has got four doors.
- Diane isn't feeling well. She's got a headache. (she's got = she has got)
- They like animals. They've got a horse, three dogs and six cats.

B
I haven't got / have you got? etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>negative</th>
<th>question</th>
<th>short answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I we you they have not (haven't) got</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>I we you they got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he she it has not (hasn't)</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>he she it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I've got a motor-bike but I haven't got a car.
- Mr and Mrs Harris haven't got any children.
- It's a nice house but it hasn't got a garden.
- 'Have you got a camera?' 'No, I haven't.'
- 'What have you got in your bag?' 'Nothing. It's empty.'
- 'Has Ann got a car?' 'Yes, she has.'
- What kind of car has she got?

C
I don't have / do you have? etc.

In negatives and questions you can also use do/does ...

- They don't have any children. (= They haven't got any children.)
- It's a nice house but it doesn't have a garden. (= it hasn't got a garden)
- Does Ann have a car? (= Has Ann got a car?)
- How much money do you have? (= How much money have you got?)

had / didn't have (past) ⇒ units 11-12
have breakfast / have a shower etc. ⇒ unit 57
some/any ⇒ unit 75
EXERCISES

9.1 Write the short form (we've got / he hasn't got etc.).
1 we have got  
2 he has got  
3 they have got  
4 she has not got  
5 it has got  
6 I have not got  

9.2 Write questions.
1 (you / an umbrella?)  
2 (you / a passport?)  
3 (your father / a car?)  
4 (Carol / many friends?)  
5 (you / any brothers or sisters?)  
6 (how much money / we?)  
7 (what / kind of car / Julia?)

9.3 What has Tina got?  
What have you got?  
Look at the information and write sentences about Tina and yourself.

1 (a camera) Tina has got a camera. I've got (OR I haven't got) a camera.
2 (a bicycle) Tina has got a bicycle. I've got (OR I haven't got) a bicycle.
3 (long hair) Tina has got long hair. I've got (OR I haven't got) long hair.
4 (brothers/sisters) Tina has got brothers and sisters. I've got (OR I haven't got) brothers and sisters.

9.4 Put in have got ('ve got), has got ('s got), haven't got or hasn't got.
1 Sarah hasn't got a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.
2 They like animals. They've got three dogs and two cats.
3 Charles isn't happy. He's got a lot of problems.
4 They don't read much. They haven't got many books.
5 'What's wrong?' 'I've got something in my eye.'
6 'Where's my pen?' 'I don't know. I've lost it.'
7 Julia wants to go to the concert but she hasn't got a ticket.

9.5 Complete the sentences. Use have/has got or haven't/hasn't got + one of these:

a lot of friends four wheels six legs a headache a toothache a key much time a garden

1 I'm not feeling very well. I've got a headache.
2 It's a nice house but it hasn't got a garden.
3 Most cars
4 Everybody likes Tom. He
5 I'm going to the dentist this morning. I
6 He can't open the door. He
7 An insect
8 We must hurry. We
A

Last night Robert was at work. At midnight last night he wasn't at work. He was in bed. He was asleep.

am/is (present) → was (past):
- I am tired. (now)
- Where is Ann? (now)
- The weather is good today.

are (present) → were (past):
- You are late. (now)
- They aren’t here. (now)
- I was tired last night.
- Where was Ann yesterday?
- The weather was good last week.

You were late yesterday.
They weren’t here last Sunday.

B

positive  | negative  | question
---------|----------|---------
I he  
| was | was not  
| (wasn’t) | | I? he?
| she she |
| it it  | were not  |
| (weren’t) |
| we you  
| they they |

- Last year Rachel was 22, so she is 23 now.
- When I was a child, I was afraid of dogs.
- We were hungry after the journey but we weren’t tired.
- The hotel was comfortable but it wasn’t expensive.
- Was the weather good when you were on holiday?
- Those shoes are nice. Were they expensive?
- Why were you late this morning?

C

short answers

Yes,  | I/he/she/it was.  
we/you/they were.  
No, I/he/she/it wasn’t.  
we/you/they weren’t.

- ‘Were you late?’ ‘No, I wasn’t.’
- ‘Was Ted at work yesterday?’ ‘Yes, he was.’
- ‘Were Sue and Steve at the party?’ ‘No, they weren’t.’
10.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?

1 George was in bed.
2 Carol and Jack
3 Sue
4
5
6 And you? I

10.2 Put in am/is/are (present) or was/were (past).

1 Last year she was 22, so she is 23 now.
2 Today the weather is nice, but yesterday it was very cold.
3 I was hungry. Can I have something to eat?
4 I feel fine this morning but I was very tired last night.
5 Where were you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
6 Don’t buy those shoes. They were very expensive.
7 I like your new jacket. It was expensive?
8 This time last year I was in Paris.
9 ‘Where were the children?’ ‘I don’t know. They were in the garden ten minutes ago.’

10.3 Put in was/were or wasn’t/weren’t.

1 We weren’t happy with the hotel. Our room was very small and it wasn’t very clean.
2 George was at work last week because he wasn’t ill. He’s better now.
3 Yesterday was a public holiday so the shops were closed. They’re open today.
4 ‘Where were Sue and Bill at the party?’ ‘Sue was there but Bill wasn’t.’
5 ‘Where are my keys?’ ‘I don’t know. They were on the table but they’re not there now.’
6 You were at home last night. Where were you?

10.4 Write the questions. Use the words in brackets (...) in the correct order + was/were.

1 (late / you / this morning / why?)
   Why were you late this morning?
2 (difficult / your exam?)
3 (last week / where / Ann and Chris?)
4 (your new camera / how much?)
5 (angry / you / yesterday / why?)
6 (nice / the weather / last week?)

The traffic was bad.
No, it was easy.
They were on holiday.
Sixty pounds.
Because you were late.
Yes, it was beautiful.
worked/got/went etc. (past simple)

A

They watch television every evening.
(present simple)

They watched television yesterday evening.
(past simple)

watched is the past simple:

I/we/you/they
he/she/it watched

B

The past simple is often -ed (regular verbs). For example:

work → worked clean → cleaned start → started
stay → stayed arrive → arrived dance → danced

- I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I cleaned my teeth.
- Terry worked in a bank from 1986 to 1993.
- Yesterday it rained all morning. It stopped at lunchtime.
- We enjoyed the party last night. We danced a lot and talked to a lot of people.
  The party finished at midnight.

Spelling (⇒ Appendix 5):

try → tried study → studied copy → copied
stop → stopped plan → planned

C

Some verbs are irregular (= not regular). The past simple is not -ed. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 2–3):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>past simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read /rid/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I usually get up early but this morning I got up at 9.30.
- We did a lot of work yesterday.
- Caroline went to the cinema three times last week.
- Jim came into the room, took off his coat and sat down.
EXERCISES

11.1 Complete the sentences. Use one of these verbs in the past simple:

**clean**  **die**  **enjoy**  **finish**  **happen**  **open**  **rain**  **start**  **stay**  **want**

1. I **cleaned** my teeth three times yesterday.
2. It was hot in the room, so I **opened** the window.
3. The concert **started** at 7.30 and **ended** at 10 o'clock.
4. When I was a child, I **wanted** to be a doctor.
5. The accident **happened** last Sunday afternoon.
6. It's a nice day today but yesterday it **rained** all day.
7. We **enjoyed** our holiday last year. We **stayed** at a very nice place.
8. Ann's grandfather **died** when he was 90 years old.

11.2 Write the past simple of these verbs.

1. get **got**
2. see **saw**
3. play **played**
4. pay **paid**
5. visit **visited**
6. buy **bought**
7. think **thought**
8. copy **copied**
9. know **knew**
10. put **put**
11. speak **spoke**

11.3 Read about Lisa's journey to Madrid. Put the verbs in the correct form.

Last Tuesday Lisa (1) **flew** from London to Madrid. She (2) **got** up at six o'clock in the morning and (3) **had** a cup of coffee. At 6.30 she (4) **left** home and (5) **drove** to the airport. When she (6) **arrived**, she (7) **parked** the car and then (8) **went** to the airport café where she (9) **had** breakfast. Then she (10) **went** through passport control and (11) **took** for her flight. The plane (12) **arrived** in Madrid two hours later. Finally she (14) **took** a taxi from the airport to her hotel in the centre of Madrid.

11.4 Write sentences about the past (yesterday / last week etc.).

1. Jim always goes to work by car. Yesterday he **went** to work by car.
2. Rachel often loses her keys. She **lost** them last week.
3. Kate meets her friends every evening. She **met** them yesterday evening.
4. I usually buy two newspapers every day. Yesterday I **bought** two newspapers.
5. We usually go to the cinema on Sundays. Last Sunday we **went** to the cinema.
6. I eat an orange every day. Yesterday I **ate** an orange.
7. Tom always has a shower in the morning. This morning he **took** a shower.
8. Our friends come to see us every Friday. They **came** to see us last Friday.

11.5 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

1. I **played** volleyball yesterday.
2. **
3. **
4. **
5. **
6. **
I didn’t ... Did you ...?
(past simple negative and questions)

A
We use **did** in past simple negatives and questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>I played</td>
<td>I didn’t</td>
<td>play?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>we started</td>
<td>we didn’t</td>
<td>start?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>you watched</td>
<td>you didn’t</td>
<td>watch?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>they had</td>
<td>they didn’t</td>
<td>have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>he saw</td>
<td>he didn’t</td>
<td>see?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>did not (didn’t)</td>
<td>do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>go?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B
**do/does (present) → did (past):**
- I don’t watch television very often.
- I didn’t watch television **yesterday**.
- Does she often go away?
- Did she go away **last week**?

C
We use **did/didn’t + infinitive** (watch/play/go etc.):

- I watched but I **didn’t watch** (not ‘I didn’t watched’)
- they went did they **go**? (not ‘did they went?’)
- he had he **didn’t have**
- you did did you **do**?

- I played tennis yesterday but I **didn’t win**.
- ‘Did you **do** the shopping?’ ‘No, I **didn’t have** time.’
- We went to the cinema but we **didn’t enjoy** the film.

D
Study the word order in questions:

```
did + subject + infinitive
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What did</th>
<th>How did</th>
<th>Where did</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>your sister</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>your parents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone</td>
<td>you?</td>
<td>yesterday evening?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>did you</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happen?</td>
<td>for their holiday?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E
**short answers**

- ‘Did you see Joe yesterday?’ ‘No, I didn’t.’
- ‘Did it rain on Sunday?’ ‘Yes, it did.’
- ‘Did Helen come to the party?’ ‘No, she didn’t.’
- ‘Did your parents have a good holiday?’ ‘Yes, they did.’

worked/got/went etc. (past simple) ⇒ **UNIT 11**
EXERCISES

12.1 Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.

1. I saw Barbara but I didn’t see Jane.
2. They worked on Monday but they didn’t work on Tuesday.
3. We went to the post office but we didn’t go to the bank.
4. She had a pen but she didn’t have any paper.
5. Jack did French at school but he didn’t do German.

12.2 Write questions with Did ...?

1. I watched TV last night. And you? Did you watch TV last night?
2. I enjoyed the party. And you?
3. I had a good holiday. And you?
4. I finished work early. And you?
5. I slept well last night. And you?

12.3 What did you do yesterday? Write positive or negative sentences.

1. (watch TV) I watched TV. OR I didn’t watch TV.
2. (get up before 7 o’clock) I got up before 7 o’clock.
3. (have a shower) I had a shower.
4. (buy a magazine) I bought a magazine.
5. (eat meat) I ate meat.
6. (go to bed before 10.30) I went to bed before 10.30.

12.4 Write B’s questions. Use:

arrive cost go go to bed late happen have a nice time stay win

| A: We went to New York last month. Where did you stay? |
| B: With some friends. |
| A: We came home by taxi. How much did it cost? |
| B: Ten pounds. |
| A: I was late this morning. What time did you arrive? |
| B: Half past nine. |
| A: No, but I didn’t sleep very well. How was the weather? |
| B: It was very warm. |
| A: I played tennis this afternoon. Did you win? |
| B: No, I lost. |
| A: I had a nice holiday. Where did you stay? |
| B: To the mountains. |

12.5 Put the verb in the correct form – positive, negative or question.

1. We went to the cinema but the film wasn’t very good. We didn’t enjoy it. (enjoy)
2. Tim bought some new clothes yesterday – two shirts, a jacket and a pullover. (buy)
3. ‘The party wasn’t very good, so we stayed long.’ ‘No, it was a nice day.’ (stay)
4. It was very warm in the room, so I opened a window. (open)
5. ‘Did you go to the bank this morning?’ ‘No, I didn’t have time.’ (have)
6. ‘I cut my hand this morning.’ ‘How did that?’ (do)
I was doing (past continuous)

It is 6 o’clock now. Sarah is at home. She is watching television.

At 4 o’clock she wasn’t at home. She was at the sports club. She was playing tennis. She wasn’t watching television.

3.00
she began playing

4.00
she was playing

4.30
she stopped playing

was/were + -ing is the past continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I he she it was doing watching playing running living etc.</td>
<td>I he she it was not (wasn’t) doing watching playing running living etc.</td>
<td>was I he she it doing? watching? playing? running? living? etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we you they were doing watching playing running living etc.</td>
<td>we you they were not (weren’t) doing watching playing running living etc.</td>
<td>were we you they doing? watching? running? living? etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• What were you doing at 11.30 yesterday? Were you working?
• ‘What did he say?’ ‘I don’t know. I wasn’t listening.’
• It was raining, so we didn’t go out.
• In 1985 we were living in Canada.
• Today she’s wearing a skirt, but yesterday she was wearing trousers.
• I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining and the birds were singing.

Spelling (live → living / run → running / lie → lying etc.) ⇒ Appendix 5

am/is/are + -ing (present) → was/were + -ing (past):

• I’m working (now). I was working at 10.30 last night.
• It isn’t raining (now). It wasn’t raining when we went out.
• What are you doing (now)? What were you doing at three o’clock?
EXERCISES

13.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o’clock yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.

1 Ann was at home. She was watching TV.
2 Carol and Jack...
3 Tom...
4...
5...
6 And you? I...

13.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1 At 9.45 she was washing her car.
2 At 11.45 she...
3 At 9 o’clock...
4 At 12.50...
5 At 8.15...
6 At 10.30...

13.3 Complete the questions. Use was/were -ing. Use what/where/why if necessary.

1 (you/live) Where were you living... in 1990?
2 (you/do)... at 2 o’clock?
3 (it/rain) when you got up?
4 (Ann/drive) so fast?
5 (Tim/wear) a suit yesterday?

13.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.

1 (wear / a jacket) He wasn’t wearing a jacket.
2 (carry / a bag)
3 (go / to the dentist)
4 (eat / an ice-cream)
5 (carry / an umbrella)
6 (go / home)
7 (wear / a hat)
8 (ride / a bicycle)
I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)

A

Jack was reading a book. The phone rang. He stopped reading. He answered the phone.

What happened? The phone rang. (past simple)
What was Jack doing when the phone rang? He was reading a book.
What did he do when the phone rang? He stopped reading and answered the phone.

Jack began reading before the phone rang.
So: When the phone rang, he was reading.

B

past simple

- A: What did you do yesterday morning?
  B: We played tennis. (from 10 to 11.30)

beginning (10 o'clock)  end (11.30)

we played (complete action)

- Jack read a book yesterday. (= from beginning to end)
- Did you watch the film on television last night?
- It didn’t rain while we were on holiday.

past continuous

- A: What were you doing at 10.30?
  B: We were playing tennis.

beginning (10 o'clock)

we were playing (unfinished action)

- Jack was reading a book when the phone rang.
- Were you watching television when I phoned you?
- It wasn’t raining when I got up.

- I started work at 9 o’clock and finished at 4.30. At 2.30 I was working.
- It was raining when we went out. (= it started raining before we went out)
- I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They were waiting at the bus stop.
- Jenny fell asleep while she was reading.
14.1 Look at the pictures and put the verbs in the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1. Carol __________ (break) her arm last week. It __________ (happen) when she __________ (paint) her room. She __________ (fall) off the ladder.
2. The train __________ (arrive) at the station and Paula __________ (get) off. Two friends of hers, John and Jenny, __________ (wait) to meet her.
3. Yesterday Sue __________ (walk) along the road when she __________ (meet) Jim. He __________ (go) to the station to catch a train and he __________ (carry) a bag. They __________ (stop) to talk for a few minutes.

14.2 Put the verb into the past continuous or past simple.

1. A: What __________ (you/do) when the phone __________ (ring)?
   B: I __________ (watch) television.
2. A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her?
   B: Yes, she __________ (study).
3. A: What time __________ (the post / arrive) this morning?
   B: It __________ (come) while I __________ (have) breakfast.
4. A: Was Margaret at work today?
   B: No, she __________ (not/go) to work. She was ill.
5. A: How fast __________ (you/drive) when the police __________ (stop) you?
   B: I don't know exactly but I __________ (not/drive) very fast.
6. A: __________ (your team / win) the football match yesterday?
   B: No, the weather was very bad, so we __________ (not/play).
7. A: How __________ (you/break) the window?
   B: We __________ (play) football. I __________ (kick) the ball and it __________ (hit) the window.
8. A: __________ (you/see) Jenny last night?
   B: Yes, she __________ (wear) a very nice jacket.
9. A: What __________ (you/do) at 2 o'clock this morning?
   B: I was asleep.
10. A: I __________ (lose) my key last night.
    B: How __________ (you/get) into your room?
    A: I __________ (climb) in through a window.
I have done (present perfect 1)

A

His shoes are dirty.

He is cleaning his shoes.

He has cleaned his shoes.

(= his shoes are clean now)

They are at home.

They are going out.

They have gone out.

(= they are not at home now)

B

has cleaned / have gone etc. is the present perfect (have + past participle):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cleaned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>started</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I       we       you       they
have ('ve) have not (haven't)

he       she       it
has ('s)  has not (hasn't)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>regular verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finished you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>started they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lost he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>done she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>been it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gone?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>irregular verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have he had / he has had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finished you saw / you have seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>started they went / they have gone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C

We use the present perfect for an action in the past with a result now:
- I've lost my passport. (= I can’t find my passport now)
- ‘Where’s Linda?’ ‘She’s gone to bed.’ (= she is in bed now)
- We’ve bought a new car. (= we have a new car now)
- It’s Rachel’s birthday tomorrow and I haven’t bought her a present.
- ‘Bob is on holiday.’ ‘Oh, where has he gone?’
- Can I take this newspaper? Have you finished with it?
EXERCISES

15.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Choose from:
go to bed   clean his shoes  stop raining  close the door  fall down  have a bath

before  now

1. [Image of shoes and person holding a light] He has cleaned his shoes.

2. [Image of person in bed and another person] She ........................................

3. [Image of bed and person] They ........................................

4. [Image of tree and rain] It ........................................

5. [Image of person and window] He ........................................

6. [Image of person and clock] The ........................................

15.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the list.
break  buy  decide  finish  forget  go  go  invite  see  not/see  take  tell

1. ‘Can I have this newspaper?’ ‘Yes, I’ve finished ........................................ with it.’
2. I ........................................ some new shoes. Do you want to see them?
3. ‘Where is Liz?’ ‘She ........................................ out.’
4. I’m looking for Paula. ........................................ you ........................................ her?
5. Look! Somebody ........................................ that window.
6. ‘Does Lisa know that you’re going away?’ ‘Yes, I ........................................ her.’
7. I can’t find my umbrella. Somebody ........................................ it.
8. I’m looking for Sarah. Where ........................................ she ........................................ ?
9. I know that woman but I ........................................ her name.
10. Sue is having a party tonight. She ........................................ a lot of people.
11. What are you going to do? ........................................ you ........................................ ?
12. ‘Where are my glasses?’ ‘I don’t know. I ........................................ them.’
I’ve just ...  I’ve already ...  I haven’t ... yet
(present perfect 2)

A  I’ve just ...

just = a short time ago

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?
  B: Yes, they’ve just arrived.
- A: Are you hungry?
  B: No, I’ve just had dinner.
- A: Is Tom here?
  B: No, I’m afraid he’s just gone.
  (= he has just gone)

They have just arrived.

B  I’ve already ...

already = before you expected / before I expected

- A: What time are Diane and Paul coming?
  B: They’ve already arrived. (= before you expected)
- A: It’s only nine o’clock and Ann has already gone to bed. (= before I expected)
- A: Tom here?
  B: No, I’m afraid he’s just gone.
  (= he has just gone)

C  I haven’t ... yet / Have you ... yet?

yet = until now

You can use yet in negative sentences and questions. Yet is usually at the end.

yet in negative sentences:

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?
  B: No, they haven’t arrived yet.
  (= but B expects Diane and Paul to arrive soon)
- A: Does John know that you’re going away?
  B: No, I haven’t told him yet.
  (= but B is going to tell him soon)
- A: Margaret has bought a new dress but she hasn’t worn it yet.

yet in questions:

- A: Have Diane and Paul arrived yet?
  B: No, not yet. We’re still waiting for them.
- A: Has Linda started her new job yet?
  B: No, she starts next week.
- A: This is my new dress.
  B: Oh, it’s nice. Have you worn it yet?
EXERCISES

16.1 Write a sentence with just for each picture.

1  They've just arrived.
2  He ................................................
3  They ........................................
4  The race ......................................

16.2 Complete the sentences. Use already + present perfect.

1 What time is Paul arriving?
2 Do Sue and Bill want to see the film?
3 Don't forget to phone Tom.
4 When is Martin going away?
5 Do you want to read the newspaper?
6 When does Linda start her new job?

- He's already arrived.
- No, they ................................................ it.
- I ..............................................................
- He ............................................................
- I ..............................................................
- She ............................................................

16.3 Write a sentence with just (They've just ... / She's just ... etc.) or a negative sentence with yet (They haven't ... yet / She hasn't ... yet etc.).

1 I'm going out soon.
2 a few minutes ago
(she / go / out)
She hasn't gone out yet.

2 now
(a few minutes ago)
The bus ..........................................................

3 now
(a few minutes ago)
The bus .................................

4 now
(a few minutes ago)
This present is for me.

5 a few minutes ago
(they / finish / their dinner)

6 a few minutes ago
(it / stop / raining)

16.4 Write questions with yet.

1 Your friend has got a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her:
Have you started your new job yet?

2 Your friend has some new neighbours. Perhaps he has met them. You ask him:

3 Your friend must write a letter. Perhaps she has written it now. You ask her:

4 Tom was trying to sell his car. Perhaps he has sold it now. You ask a friend about Tom:
Have you ever ... ? (present perfect 3)

We use the present perfect (have been / have had / have played etc.) when we talk about a time from the past until now — for example, a person’s life:

HAVE YOU EVER BEEN TO JAPAN?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Now</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- ‘Have you been to France?’ (in your life) ‘No, I haven’t.’
- I’ve been to Canada but I haven’t been to the United States.
- Mary is an interesting person. She has had many different jobs and has lived in many places.
- I’ve seen that woman before but I can’t remember where.
- How many times has Brazil won the World Cup?
- ‘Have you read this book?’ ‘Yes, I’ve read it twice.’ (twice = two times)

present perfect + ever (in questions) and never:

- ‘Has Ann ever been to Australia?’ ‘Yes, once.’ (once = one time)
- ‘Have you ever played golf?’ ‘Yes, I often play golf.’
- My mother has never travelled by air.
- I’ve never ridden a horse.
- ‘Who is that man?’ ‘I don’t know. I’ve never seen him before.’

gone and been

Where’s Bill?
Bill has gone to Spain.
(= he is in Spain now)

Hello, Bill.
Bill has been to Spain.
(= he went to Spain but now he is back)

Compare:
- I can’t find Susan. Where has she gone? (= Where is she now?)
- Oh, hello Susan! I was looking for you. Where have you been?

present perfect ⇒ units 15-16, 18, 20  present perfect and past simple ⇒ unit 20
EXERCISES

17.1 You are asking Helen questions beginning Have you ever ...? Write the questions.

1 (London?) Have you ever been to London?
2 (play / golf?) Have you ever played golf?
3 (Australia?) Have you ever been to Australia?
4 (lose / your passport?) Have you ever lost your passport?
5 (fly / in a helicopter?) Have you ever flown in a helicopter?
6 (eat / Chinese food?) Have you ever eaten Chinese food?
7 (New York?) Have you ever been to New York?
8 (drive / a bus?) Have you ever driven a bus?
9 (break / your leg?) Have you ever broken your leg?

17.2 Write sentences about Helen. (Look at her answers in Exercise 17.1.)

1 (New York) Helen has been to New York twice.
2 (Australia) Helen has been to Australia once.
3 (Chinese food) Helen has eaten Chinese food.
4 (drive / a bus) Helen has driven a bus.

Now write about yourself. How often have you done these things?

5 (New York) I have been to New York.
6 (play / tennis) I have played tennis many times.
7 (fly / in a helicopter) I have flown in a helicopter.
8 (be / late for work or school) I have been late for work or school.

17.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?

Mary has had many different jobs.
She has travelled all over the world.
She has met a lot of interesting people.
She has written ten books.

17.4 Put in gone or been.

1 Bill is on holiday at the moment. He's gone to Spain.
2 'Where's Jill?' 'She's not here. I think she's gone to the bank.'
3 Hello, Sue. Where have you been? Have you been to the bank?
4 'Have you ever been to Mexico?' 'No, never.'
5 My parents aren't at home this evening. They've gone out.
6 There's a new restaurant in town. Have you been to it?
7 Ann knows Paris well. She's been there many times.
8 Helen was here earlier but I think she's been here now.
A

Jill is on holiday in Ireland. She is there now.

She arrived in Ireland on Monday.

Today is Thursday.

How long has she been in Ireland?

She has been in Ireland since Monday, for three days.

Compare is and has been:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monday</th>
<th>NOW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She has been in Ireland since Monday. for three days.</td>
<td>She is in Ireland now</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

has been = present perfect

is = present

B

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present simple</th>
<th>present perfect simple (have been/have lived/have known etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mark and Liz are married.</td>
<td>They have been married for five years. (not 'They are married for five years.')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you married?</td>
<td>How long have you been married? (not 'How long are you married?')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you know Sarah?</td>
<td>How long have you known her? (not 'How long do you know her?')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I know Sarah.</td>
<td>I've known her for a long time. (not 'I know her for...')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linda lives in London.</td>
<td>How long has she lived in London? She has lived there all her life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have a car.</td>
<td>How long have you had your car? I've had it since April.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present continuous</th>
<th>present perfect continuous (have been + ing)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm learning German.</td>
<td>How long have you been learning German? (not 'How long are you learning German?') I've been learning German for two years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David is watching TV.</td>
<td>How long has he been watching TV? He's been (= He has been) watching TV since 5 o'clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's raining.</td>
<td>It's been (= It has been) raining all day.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**EXERCISES**

**18.1** Complete these sentences.

1. Jill is in hospital. She **has been** in hospital since Monday.
2. I know Sarah. I **have known** her for a long time.
3. Linda and Frank are married. They **have been married** since 1989.
4. Brian is ill. He **has been ill** for the last few days.
5. We live in Scott Road. We **have been there** for ten years.
6. Catherine works in a bank. She **has been in a bank** for five years.
7. Alan has a headache. He **has had a headache** since he got up this morning.
8. I’m learning English. I **have been learning** English for six months.

**18.2** Make questions with How long ... ?

1. **How long has she been on holiday?**
   - Jill is on holiday.

2. **How long have you been in Brazil?**
   - Mike and Judy are in Brazil.

3. **How long have you known Margaret?**
   - I know Margaret.

4. **How long have you been learning Italian?**
   - Diana is learning Italian.

5. **How long have you lived in Canada?**
   - My brother lives in Canada.

6. **How long have you been a teacher?**
   - I’m a teacher.

7. **How long has it been raining?**
   - It is raining.

**18.3**

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Your sentence must end with one of these:

*for ten minutes* *all day* *all her life* *for ten years* *since he was 20* *since Sunday*

1. **They have been married for ten years.**
2. **She has been learning Italian for ten years.**
3. **They have been living in Canada all day.**
4. **The sun has been shining all day.**
5. **I’m waiting for ten minutes.**
6. **I have a beard.**

**18.4** Which is right?

1. Mark is / has been in Canada since April. **has been** is right
2. Jane is a good friend of mine. I know / have known her very well.
3. Jane is a good friend of mine. I know / have known her for a long time.
4. ‘Sorry I’m late. How long are you / have you been waiting?’ ‘Not long. Only five minutes.’
5. Martin works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job very much.
6. Linda is reading the newspaper. She is / has been reading it for two hours.
7. ‘How long do you live / have you lived in this house?’ ‘About ten years.’
8. ‘Is that a new coat?’ ‘No, I have / I’ve had this coat for a long time.’
9. Tom is / has been in Spain at the moment. He is / has been there for the last three days.
for and since

We use for and since to say how long:

- Jill is in Ireland. She has been there for three days, since Monday.

We use for + a period of time (three days/two years etc.):

- Richard has been in Canada for six months. (not ‘since six months’)
- We’ve been waiting for two hours. (not ‘since two hours’)
- I’ve lived in London for a long time.

We use since + the start of the period (Monday/9 o’clock etc.):

- Richard has been in Canada since January. (= from January to now)
- We’ve been waiting since 9 o’clock. (= from 9 o’clock to now)
- I’ve lived in London since I was ten years old.

ago

ago = before now:

- Susan started her new job three weeks ago. (= three weeks before now)
- ‘When did Tom go out?’ ‘Ten minutes ago.’ (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner an hour ago.
- Life was very different a hundred years ago.

We use ago with the past (started/did/had/was etc.).

Compare ago and for:

- When did Jill arrive in Ireland?
  She arrived in Ireland three days ago.

- How long has she been in Ireland?
  She has been in Ireland for three days.
EXERCISES

19.1 Write for or since.

1. Jill has been in Ireland since Monday.
2. Jill has been in Ireland for three days.
3. My aunt has lived in Australia for 15 years.
4. Margaret is in her office. She has been there since 7 o’clock.
5. India has been an independent country since 1947.
6. The bus is late. We’ve been waiting for 20 minutes.
7. Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty for many years.
8. Mike has been ill for a long time. He has been in hospital since October.

19.2 Answer these questions. Use ago.

1. When was your last meal? 
2. When was the last time you were ill?
3. When did you last go to the cinema?
4. When was the last time you were in a car?
5. When was the last time you went on holiday?

19.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets (...) + for or ago.

1. Jill arrived in Ireland three days ago.
2. Jill has been in Ireland for three days.
3. Linda and Frank have been married for 20 years.
4. Linda and Frank got married two years ago.
5. Dan arrived ten minutes ago.
6. We had lunch an hour ago.
7. Silvia has been learning English for six months.
8. Have you known Lisa for a long time?
9. I bought these shoes a few days ago.

19.4 Complete the sentences with for or since.

1. Jill is in Ireland now. She arrived there three days ago. She has been there for three days.
2. Jack is here. He arrived here on Tuesday. He has been here since Tuesday.
3. It’s raining. It started an hour ago. It’s been raining for an hour.
4. I know Sue. I first met Sue two years ago. I’ve known Sue for two years.
6. They are married. They got married six months ago. They’ve been married for six months.
7. Liz is studying medicine at university. She started three years ago. She has been studying for three years.
8. Dave plays the piano. He started when he was seven years old. Dave has been playing for seven years.

19.5 Write sentences about yourself. Begin with the words in brackets (...)....
I have done (present perfect) and I did (past simple)

A With a finished time (yesterday / last week etc.), we use the past (arrived/saw/was etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past simple + finished time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We arrived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at 3 o’clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in 1991.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>six months ago.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do not use the present perfect (have arrived / have done / have been etc.) with a finished time:

- I saw Paula yesterday. (not ‘I have seen’)  
- Where were you on Sunday afternoon? (not ‘Where have you been’)  
- We didn’t have a holiday last year. (not ‘We haven’t had’)  
- ‘What did you do last night?’ ‘I stayed at home.’  
- William Shakespeare lived from 1564 to 1616. He was a writer. He wrote many plays and poems.

Use the past simple to ask When ... ? or What time ... ?:

- When did they arrive? (not ‘When have they arrived?’)

B Compare:

**present perfect**
- I have lost my key.
  (= I can’t find it now)  
- Bill has gone home.
  (= he isn’t here now)  
- Have you seen Ann?
  (= where is she now?)

**past simple**
- I lost my key last week.
- Bill went home ten minutes ago.
- Did you see Ann on Saturday?

- Did you ever been to Spain?
  (= in your life, until now)  
- My friend is a writer. He has written many books.  
- The letter hasn’t arrived yet.  
- We’ve lived in Singapore for six years.
  (= we live there now)

- Did you go to Spain last year?  
- Shakespeare wrote many plays and poems.  
- The letter didn’t arrive yesterday.  
- We lived in Glasgow for six years but now we live in Singapore.
**EXERCISES**

20.1 Use the words in brackets (…) to answer the questions.

1. Have you seen Ann? (5 minutes ago) Yes, I saw her 5 minutes ago.
2. Have you started your new job? (last week) Yes, I started last week.
3. Have your friends arrived? (at 5 o’clock) Yes, they arrived.
4. Has Sarah gone away? (on Friday) Yes, she’s gone away.
5. Have you worn your new shoes? (yesterday) Yes, I’ve worn them.

20.2 Right or wrong? Correct the verbs that are wrong. (The verbs are underlined.)

1. I’ve lost my key. I can’t find it.
   RIGHT...
   WRONG: I’m looking for my key. I can’t find it.
2. Have you seen Ann yesterday?
   RIGHT...
   WRONG: Did you see Ann yesterday?
3. I’ve finished my work at 2 o’clock.
   RIGHT...
   WRONG: I’ve finished my work at 2 o’clock.
4. I’m ready now. I’ve finished my work.
5. What time have you finished your work?
   RIGHT...
   WRONG: What time did you finish your work?
6. Sue isn’t here. She’s gone out.
   RIGHT...
   WRONG: Sue isn’t here. She’s left.
7. Jim’s grandmother has died in 1989.
   RIGHT...
   WRONG: Jim’s grandmother died in 1989.
8. Where have you been last night?
   RIGHT...
   WRONG: Where did you go last night?

20.3 Put the verb in the present perfect or past simple.

1. My friend is a writer. He has written many books.
2. We didn’t have a holiday last year.
3. I played tennis yesterday afternoon.
4. What time did you go to bed last night?
5. The weather wasn’t very good yesterday.
6. Kathy travels a lot. She has visited many countries.
7. ‘Is Sonia here?’ ‘No, she hasn’t come yet.’
8. ‘Do you know Martin’s sister?’ ‘Yes, I met her at a party last week. She’s very nice.’

20.4 Put the verb in the present perfect or past simple.

1. A: Have you ever been to Florida?
   B: Yes, we went there on holiday two years ago.
   A: Did you have a good time?
   B: Yes, it was great.
2. A: Where’s Alan?
   B: Yes, he went out a few minutes ago.
   A: And Julia?
   B: I don’t know. I didn’t see her.
3. Rose works in a factory. She has worked there for six months. Before that she was a waitress in a restaurant. She worked there for two years but she didn’t enjoy it very much.
4. A: Do you know Martin’s sister?
   B: I never spoke to her before that.
   A: Did you ever speak to her?
   B: Yes, I met her at a party last week. She’s very nice.
is done was done (passive 1)

A

The office is cleaned every day.
The office was cleaned yesterday.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody cleans the office every day. (active)
The office is cleaned every day. (passive)

Somebody cleaned the office yesterday. (active)
The office was cleaned yesterday. (passive)

B

The passive is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am/is/are (not) +</td>
<td>cleaned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invented</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injured</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The past participle of regular verbs is -ed (cleaned/damaged etc.).
For a list of irregular past participles (done/built/taken etc.), see Appendix 2–3.

- Butter is made from milk.
- Oranges are imported into Britain.
- How often are these rooms cleaned?
- I am never invited to parties.
- This house was built 100 years ago.
- These houses were built 100 years ago.
- When was the telephone invented?
- We weren’t invited to the party last week.
- ‘Was anybody injured in the accident?’ ‘Yes, two people were taken to hospital.’

C

was/were born

- I was born in London in 1962. (not ‘I am born’)
- Where were you born?

D

Passive + by …

- We were woken up by a loud noise. (= The noise woke us up.)
- The telephone was invented by Alexander Bell in 1876.
- My brother was bitten by a dog last week.
EXERCISES

21.1 Write sentences from the words in brackets (...). Sentences 1-7 are present.

1. (the office / clean / every day) The office is cleaned every day.
2. (these rooms / clean / every day?) Are these rooms cleaned every day?
3. (glass / make / from sand) Glass is made from sand.
4. (stamps / sell / in a post office) Stamps are sold in a post office.
5. (this room / not / use / very often) This room is not used very often.
6. (we / allow / to park here?) Are we allowed to park here?
7. (how / this word / pronounce?) How do you pronounce this word?

Sentences 8-15 are past.

8. (the office / clean / yesterday) The office was cleaned yesterday.
9. (the house / paint / last month) The house was painted last month.
10. (three people / injure / in the accident) Three people were injured in the accident.
11. (my bicycle / steal / a few days ago) My bicycle was stolen a few days ago.
12. (when / this bridge / build?) When was this bridge built?
13. (you / invite / to the party last week?) Did you invite me to the party last week?
14. (how / these windows / break?) How did these windows break?
15. (I / not / wake up / by the noise) I didn't wake up by the noise.

21.2 Correct these sentences.

1. (This house built) 100 years ago. This house was built 100 years ago.
2. Football plays in most countries of the world. Football is played in most countries of the world.
3. Why did the letter send to the wrong address? The letter was sent to the wrong address.
4. A garage is a place where cars repair. A garage is a place where cars are repaired.
5. Where are you born? I was born here.
6. How many languages are speaking in Switzerland? Many languages are spoken in Switzerland.
7. Somebody broke into our house but nothing stolen. Someone broke into our house but nothing was stolen.
8. When was invented the bicycle? The bicycle was invented in 1817.

21.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:

clean damage find give invite make show steal take

1. The room is cleaned every day.
2. I saw an accident yesterday. Two people were taken to hospital.
3. Paper is made from wood.
4. There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms were damaged.
5. ‘Where did you get this picture?’ ‘It was given to me by a friend of mine.’
6. Many American programmes are shown on British television.
7. ‘Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?’ ‘No. They didn’t go.’
8. ‘How old is this film?’ ‘It was invented in 1965.’
9. My car was taken last week but the next day it was taken by the police.

21.4 Where were they born?

1. (Ian / Edinburgh) Ian was born in Edinburgh.
2. (Sally / Birmingham) Sally was born in Birmingham.
3. (her parents / Ireland) Her parents are from Ireland.
4. (you / ???) You were born...
5. (your mother / ???) Your mother was born...
is being done  has been done
(passive 2)

A  is/are being ... (present continuous passive)

- Somebody is painting the door. (active)
- The door is being painted. (passive)

- My car is at the garage. It is being repaired. (= somebody is repairing it)
- Some new houses are being built opposite the park. (= somebody is building them)

Compare the present continuous and present simple:
- The office is being cleaned at the moment. (continuous)
  The office is cleaned every day. (simple)
- In Britain football matches are usually played on Saturday, but no matches are being played next Saturday.

For the present continuous and present simple, see Units 8 and 26.

B  has/have been ... (present perfect passive)

- Somebody has painted the door. (active)
- The door has been painted. (passive)

- My key has been stolen. (= somebody has stolen it)
- My keys have been stolen. (= somebody has stolen them)
- I’m not going to the party. I haven’t been invited. (= nobody has invited me)
- Has this shirt been washed? (= Has somebody washed it?)

Compare the present perfect and past simple:
- The room is clean now. It has been cleaned. (present perfect)
  The room was cleaned yesterday. (past simple)
- I can’t find my keys. I think they’ve been stolen. (present perfect)
  My keys were stolen last week. (past simple)

For the present perfect and past simple, see Unit 20.
EXERCISES

22.1 What's happening?

1. The car is being repaired.
2. A bridge
3. The windows
4. The grass

22.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (is/are being ...) or the present perfect (has/have been ...).

1. (the office / clean) The office is being cleaned.
2. (the shirts / iron) The shirts have been ironed.
3. (the window / break) The window
4. (the roof / repair) The roof
5. (the car / damage) The car
6. (the houses / knock / down) The houses
7. (the trees / cut / down) The trees
8. (they / invite / to a party) They

22.3 Use the words in brackets (...) to complete the sentences. (Units 21 and 22)

1. I can't use my office at the moment. It is being painted.
2. We didn't go to the party. We weren't invited.
3. The washing machine was broken but it's OK now. It is being repaired.
4. The washing machine was repaired yesterday afternoon.
5. A factory is a place where things are made.
6. How old are these houses? When were they built?
7. A: Have you ever seen the computer before? What is it used for at the moment? B: Yes, Jim is using it.
8. I've never seen these flowers before. What are they called?
9. Some trees were blown down in the storm last night.
10. The bridge is closed at the moment. It was damaged last week and it is not yet being repaired.
be/have/do in present and past tenses

A  be (= am/is/are/was/were) + -ing (cleaning/working etc.)

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am/is/are + -ing</td>
<td>(present continuous)</td>
<td>• Please be quiet. I’m working.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• It isn’t raining at the moment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• What are you doing this evening?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was/were + -ing</td>
<td>(past continuous)</td>
<td>• I was working when she arrived.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• It wasn’t raining, so we went out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• What were you doing at three o’clock?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⇒ Units 3-4 and 26

⇒ Unit 13

B  be + past participle (cleaned/made/eaten etc.)

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am/is/are + past participle</td>
<td>(passive present simple )</td>
<td>• The room is cleaned every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• I’m never invited to parties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Oranges are imported into Britain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was/were + past participle</td>
<td>(passive past simple )</td>
<td>• The room was cleaned yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• These houses were built 100 years ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• How was the window broken?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Where were you born?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⇒ Unit 21

⇒ Unit 21

C  have/has + past participle (cleaned/lost/eaten/been etc.)

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have/has + past participle</td>
<td>(present perfect)</td>
<td>• I’ve cleaned my room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Tom has lost his passport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Barbara hasn’t been to Canada.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Where have Paul and Linda gone?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⇒ Units 15-18

D  do/does/did + infinitive (clean/like/eat/go etc.)

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do/does + infinitive</td>
<td>(present simple negative and questions)</td>
<td>• I like coffee but I don’t like tea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Chris doesn’t go out very often.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• What do you usually do at weekends?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Does Barbara live alone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>did + infinitive</td>
<td>(past simple negative and questions)</td>
<td>• I didn’t watch TV yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• It didn’t rain last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• What time did Paul and Linda go out?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

⇒ Units 6-7

⇒ Unit 12

⇒ Unit 24, Appendix 2-3
EXERCISES

23.1 Put in is/are/do/does.

1. Do you work in the evenings?
2. Where are they going?
3. Why are you looking at me?
4. Bill live near you?
5. you like cooking?
6. the sun shining?
7. What time the shops close?
8. Ann working today?
9. this word mean?
10. you feeling all right?

23.2 Put in am not / isn't / aren't / don't / doesn't. All these sentences are negative.

1. Tom doesn't work in the evenings.
2. I'm very tired. I don't want to go out this evening.
3. I'm very tired. I'm not going out this evening.
4. George isn't working this week. He's on holiday.
5. My parents are usually at home. They don't go out very often.
6. Barbara has travelled a lot but she doesn't speak any foreign languages.
7. You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.
8. There's a party next week but we don't going.

23.3 Put in was/were/did/have/has.

1. Where were your shoes made?
2. you go out last night?
3. What are you doing at 10.30?
4. Where's your mother born?
5. Barbara gone home?
6. What time she go?
7. When these houses built?
8. Jim arrived yet?
9. You go home early?
10. How long they been married?

23.4 Put in is/are/was/were/have/has.

1. Joe has lost his passport.
2. This bridge was built ten years ago.
3. you finished your work yet?
4. This town is always clean. The streets were cleaned every day.
5. Where you born?
6. I just made some coffee. Would you like some?
7. Glass made from sand.
8. This is a very old photograph. It was taken a long time ago.

23.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form.

damage eat enjoy go go away listen open pronounce rain understand use

1. I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's raining.
2. Why are you so tired? Did you go to bed late last night?
3. Where are the chocolates? Have you eaten them all?
4. How is your new job? Are you enjoying it?
5. My car was badly damaged in the accident but I was OK.
6. Chris has got a car but she doesn't use it very often.
7. Mary isn't at home. She has gone away for a few days.
8. I don't understand the problem. Can you explain it again?
9. Martin is in his room. He's listening to music.
10. I don't know how to say this word. How is it pronounced?
11. How do you open this window? Can you show me?
A Regular verbs

The past simple and past participle of regular verbs is -ed:

- clean → cleaned
- live → lived
- paint → painted
- study → studied

Past simple (⇒ Unit 11)

- I cleaned my shoes yesterday.
- Charlie studied engineering at university.

Past participle

Present perfect = have/has + past participle (⇒ Units 15-18):

- I have cleaned my shoes.
- Jane has lived in London for ten years.

Passive = be (is / are / were / has been etc.) + past participle (⇒ Units 21-22):

- These rooms are cleaned every day.
- My car has been repaired.

B Irregular verbs

The past simple and past participle of irregular verbs are not -ed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>make</th>
<th>break</th>
<th>cut</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past participle</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>make</th>
<th>find</th>
<th>buy</th>
<th>cut</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I made a cake yesterday. (past simple)
- I have made some coffee. (past participle - present perfect)
- Butter is made from milk. (past participle - passive present)

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>break</th>
<th>know</th>
<th>begin</th>
<th>go</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past participle</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td>known</td>
<td>begun</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Somebody broke this window last night. (past simple)
- Somebody has broken this window. (past participle - present perfect)
- This window was broken last night. (past participle - passive past)
EXERCISES

24.1 Write the past simple / past participle of these verbs. (The past simple and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

1. make ___________ 6. enjoy ___________ 11. hear ___________
2. cut ___________ 7. buy ___________ 12. put ___________
3. get ___________ 8. sit ___________ 13. catch ___________
4. bring ___________ 9. leave ___________ 14. watch ___________
5. pay ___________ 10. happen ___________ 15. understand ___________

24.2 Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs.

1. break ___________ broke ___________ broken ___________
2. begin ___________ 7. speak ___________ 11. take ___________
3. eat ___________ 8. write ___________ 12. go ___________
4. drink ___________ 9. come ___________ 13. give ___________
5. drive ___________ 10. know ___________ 14. throw ___________
6. put ___________ 15. forget ___________

24.3 Put the verb in the right form.

1. I ___________ my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
2. Somebody has ___________ this window. (break)
3. I feel good. I ___________ very well last night. (sleep)
4. We ___________ a very good film yesterday. (see)
5. It ___________ a lot while we were on holiday. (rain)
6. I ___________ my bag. (lose) Have you ___________ it? (see)
7. Rosa’s bicycle was ___________ last week. (steal)
8. I ___________ to bed early because I was tired. (go)
9. Have you ___________ your work yet? (finish)
10. The shopping centre was ___________ about 20 years ago. (build)
11. Ann ___________ to drive when she was 18. (learn)
12. I’ve never ___________ a horse. (ride)
13. Julia is a good friend of mine. I ___________ her for a long time. (know)
14. Yesterday I ___________ and ___________ my leg. (fall / hurt)

24.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form.

cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think
wake up win

1. I have ___________ some coffee. Would you like some?
2. Have you ___________ John about your new job?
3. We played basketball on Sunday. We didn’t play very well but we ___________.
4. I know Gary but I’ve never ___________ his wife.
5. We were ___________ by loud music in the middle of the night.
6. Stephanie jumped into the river and ___________ to the other side.
7. ‘Did you like the film?’ ‘Yes, I ___________ it was very good.’
8. Many different languages are ___________ in the Philippines.
9. Our holiday ___________ a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
10. Have you ever ___________ a very fast car?
11. All the tickets for the concert were ___________ very quickly.
12. A bird ___________ in through the open window while we were having our dinner.
Dave used to work in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.

Dave used to work in a factory = he worked in a factory before but he doesn’t work there now:

\[ \text{past} \quad \text{he used to work} \quad \text{he works} \quad \text{NOW} \]

You can say I used to work ... / she used to have ... / they used to be ... etc.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/you/we/they</th>
<th>used to</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>work</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>play etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- When I was a child, I used to like chocolate.
- I used to read a lot of books but I don’t read much these days.
- Liz has got short hair now but it used to be very long.
- They used to live in the same street as us, so we often used to see them. But we don’t see them very often these days.
- Ann used to have a piano but she sold it a few years ago.

The negative is I didn’t use to ...

- When I was a child I didn’t use to like tomatoes.

The question is did you use to ... ?

- Where did you use to live before you came here?

We use used to ... only for the past. You cannot say ‘I use to …’ (present):

- I used to play tennis. These days I play golf. (not ‘I use to play golf’)
- We usually get up early. (not ‘We use to get up early.’)
EXERCISES

25.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with used to ...

1. She used to have long __________.
2. He __________ football.
3. __________ a taxi driver.
4. __________ in the country.

25.2 Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, things were different.

Karen A Few Years Ago

Do you do any sport?
- Yes, I go swimming every day and I play volleyball.

Do you go out in the evenings?
- Yes, most evenings.

Do you play a musical instrument?
- Yes, the guitar.

Do you like reading?
- Yes, I read a lot.

Do you travel much?
- Yes, I go away two or three times a year.

Karen Now

I work very hard in my job. I don't have any free time.

Write sentences about Karen with used to ....

1. She __________ to go swimming every day.
2. __________
3. __________

25.3 Complete these sentences. Use used to or the present simple (I play / he lives etc.).

1. I __________ to play tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.
2. Do you do any sport? 'Yes, I __________ basketball.'
3. 'Have you got a car?' 'No, I __________ one but I sold it.'
4. George __________ a waiter. Now he's the manager of a hotel.
5. 'Do you go to work by car?' 'Sometimes but most days I __________ by train.'
6. When I was a child, I never __________ meat, but I eat it now.
7. Mary loves watching TV. She __________ TV every evening.
8. We __________ near the airport but we moved to the city centre a few years ago.
9. Normally I start work at 7 o'clock, so I __________ up very early.
10. What games __________ you __________ when you were a child?
What are you doing tomorrow?

A

They are playing tennis (now).

He is playing tennis tomorrow.

We use am/is/are + -ing (present continuous) for something happening now:
- ‘Where are Sue and Caroline?’ ‘They’re playing tennis in the park.’
- Please be quiet. I’m working.

We also use am/is/are + -ing for the future (tomorrow / next week etc.):
- Andrew is playing tennis tomorrow.
- I’m not working next week.

B

I am doing something tomorrow = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it:
- Alice is going to the dentist on Friday.
  (= she has an appointment to see the dentist)
- We’re having a party next weekend.
- Are you meeting Bill this evening?
- What are you doing tomorrow evening?
- I’m not going out tonight. I’m staying at home.

You can also say ‘I’m going to do something’ (⇒ Unit 27).

C

Do not use the present simple (I stay / do you go etc.) for plans and arrangements:
- I’m staying at home this evening. (not ‘I stay’)
- Are you going out tonight? (not ‘Do you go’)
- Ann isn’t coming to the party next week. (not ‘Ann doesn’t come’)

But we use the present simple for timetables, programmes, trains, buses etc.:
- The train arrives at 7.30.
- What time does the film finish?

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present continuous</th>
<th>present simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m going to a concert tomorrow.</td>
<td>The concert starts at 7.30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What time are you leaving?</td>
<td>What time does your train leave?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
26.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?

1. Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.
2. Richard is going to the cinema.
3. Barbara is having lunch with Ken.
4. Denise is reading a book.
5. Tom and Sue are studying for their exams.

26.2 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

1. (you / go / out / tonight?)
2. (you / work / next week?)
3. (what / you / do / tomorrow evening?)
4. (what time / your friends / arrive?)
5. (when / Liz / go / on holiday?)

26.3 Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

1. I'm staying at home tonight.
2. I'm going to the theatre on Monday.
3. I'm going to the library on Tuesday.
4. I'm going to visit my grandparents on Wednesday.
5. I'm going to the gym on Thursday.
6. I'm going to the beach on Sunday.

26.4 Put the verb in the present continuous (he is leaving etc.) or present simple (the train leaves etc.).

1. Are you going out this evening? 'No, I'm too tired.'
2. We're going to a concert this evening. It starts at 7.30.
3. Do you know about Sally? She's getting married next month!
4. A: My parents are going on holiday next week. B: Oh, that's nice. Where are they going?
5. Silvia is doing an English course at the moment. The course finishes on Friday.
6. There's a football match tomorrow but I'm not going.
7. I'm going out with some friends tonight. Why don't you come too? We're meeting at John's house at 8 o'clock.
8. A: How are you getting home after the party tomorrow? By taxi? B: No, I can go by bus. The last bus leaves at midnight.
9. A: Do you want to go to the cinema tonight? B: Yes, what time does the film begin?
10. A: What are you doing next Monday afternoon? B: I'm working.
I'm going to ...  

A  I'm going to (do something)

**MORNING**

I'm going to watch TV this evening.

She is going to watch TV this evening.

We use *am/is/are going to* for the future:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>am</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>are</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td>am</td>
<td>(not) going to</td>
<td>do ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>(not) going to</td>
<td>drink ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we/you/they</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>(not) going to</td>
<td>watch ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>am</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>are</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>going to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td></td>
<td>we/you/they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B  I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it:

I decided to do it — I'm going to do it —

- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
- 'Your hands are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to wash them.'
- Are you going to invite John to your party?

We also use the present continuous (I am doing) for the future, usually for arrangements (⇒ Unit 26):

- I am playing tennis with Julia tomorrow.

C  Something is going to happen

Something is going to happen = it is clear now that it is sure to happen:

- Look at the sky! It's going to rain.
  (black clouds now → rain)
- Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready. I'm going to be late.
  (9 o'clock now and not ready → late)
**EXERCISES**

**27.1** What are these people saying?

![Image 1](I'm going to watch TV.)

![Image 2](I'm going to wash.)

![Image 3](We...)

![Image 4](I...)

**27.2** Complete the sentences. Use **going to** + one of these verbs:

- eat
- do
- give
- lie down
- stay
- walk
- wash
- watch
- wear

1. My hands are dirty. **I’m going to wash** them.
2. What **are you going to wear** to the party tonight?
3. I don’t want to go home by bus. I...
4. John is going to London next week. He...
5. I’m hungry. I...
6. It’s Sharon’s birthday next week. We...
7. Sue says she’s feeling very tired. She...
8. There’s a good film on TV this evening. **You**...
9. What **is Rachel** when she leaves school?

**27.3** Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?

1. It’s going to rain.
2. The shelf...
3. The car...
4. He...

**27.4** What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

1. I’m...
2. ...
3. ...

[63]
Sarah goes to work every day. She is always there from 8.30 until 4.30.
It is 11 o’clock now. Sarah is at work.
At 11 o’clock yesterday, she was at work.
At 11 o’clock tomorrow, she will be at work.

will + infinitive (will be / will win / will come etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>will (’ll)</th>
<th>will not (won’t)</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>win?</th>
<th>eat?</th>
<th>come? etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>won’t</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>win?</td>
<td>eat?</td>
<td>come? etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

’ll = will: I’ll (I will) / you’ll / she’ll etc.
won’t = will not: I won’t (= I will not) / you won’t / she won’t etc.

We use will for the future (tomorrow / next week etc.):
- Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Madrid. Tomorrow she’ll be in Rome. Next week she’ll be in Tokyo.
- You can phone me this evening. I’ll be at home.
- Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds will eat it.
- We’ll probably go out this evening.
- Will you be at home this evening?
- I won’t be here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- Don’t drink coffee before you go to bed. You won’t sleep.

We often say I think ... will ... :
- I think Diana will pass the exam.
- I don’t think it will rain this afternoon.
- Do you think the exam will be difficult?

We do not use will for things we have arranged or decided to do (⇒ Units 26-27):
- We’re going to the cinema on Saturday. (not ‘We will go’)
- I’m not working tomorrow. (not ‘I won’t work’)
- Are you going to do the exam? (not ‘Will you do’)

Shall
You can say I shall (= I will) and we shall (= we will):
- I shall be late tomorrow. or I will (I’ll) be late tomorrow.
- I think we shall win. or I think we will (we’ll) win.

But do not use shall with you/they/he/she/it:
- Tom will be late. (not ‘Tom shall be’)
EXERCISES

28.1 Helen is travelling in Europe. Complete the sentences with she was, she’s or she’ll be.

1 Yesterday she was in Paris.
2 Tomorrow in Amsterdam.
3 Last week in Barcelona.
4 Next week in London.
5 At the moment in Brussels.
6 Three days ago in Munich.
7 At the end of her trip very tired.

28.2 Where will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use: I’ll be ... or I’ll probably be ... or I don’t know where I’ll be.

1 (at 10 o’clock tomorrow) I’ll probably be on the beach. OR I’ll be at work. OR I don’t know where I’ll be.
2 (one hour from now)
3 (at midnight tonight)
4 (at 3 o’clock tomorrow afternoon)
5 (two years from now)

28.3 Put in will (’ll) or won’t.

1 Don’t drink coffee before you go to bed. You won’t sleep.
2 ‘Are you ready yet?’ ‘Not yet. I will be ready in five minutes.’
3 I’m going away for a few days. I’m leaving tonight, so I will be at home tomorrow.
4 It will rain, so you don’t need to take an umbrella.
5 A: I don’t feel very well this evening.
   B: Well, go to bed early and you will feel better in the morning.
6 It’s Bill’s birthday next Monday. He will be 25.
7 I’m sorry I was late this morning. It didn’t happen again.

28.4 Write sentences beginning I think ... or I don’t think ....

1 (Diana will pass the exam) I think Diana will pass the exam.
2 (Diana won’t pass the exam) I don’t think Diana will pass the exam.
3 (we’ll win the game)
4 (I won’t be here tomorrow)
5 (Sue will like her present)
6 (they won’t get married)
7 (you won’t enjoy the film)

28.5 Which is right? (Study Unit 26 before you do this exercise.)

1 We’ll go / We’re going to the theatre tonight. We’ve got tickets. We’re going is right.
2 ‘What will you do / are you doing tomorrow evening?’ ‘Nothing. I’m free.’
3 They’ll go / They’re going away tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8.40.
4 I’m sure she’ll lend / she’s lending us some money. She’s very rich.
5 ‘Why are you putting on your coat?’ ‘I’ll go / I’m going out.’
6 Do you think Claire will phone / is phoning us tonight?
7 Steve can’t meet us on Saturday. He’ll work / He’s working.
8 Will / Shall you be at home tomorrow evening?
will/shall (2)

You can use I’ll … (I will) when you offer or decide to do something:

- ‘My bag is very heavy.’  I’ll carry it for you.
- I’ll phone you tomorrow, OK?  ‘OK, goodbye.’

We often say I think I’ll … / I don’t think I’ll … when we decide to do something:

- I’m tired. I think I’ll go to bed early tonight.
- It’s a nice day. I think I’ll sit in the garden.
- It’s raining. I don’t think I’ll go out.

Do not use the present simple (I go / I phone etc.) in sentences like these:

- I’ll phone you tomorrow, OK? (not ‘I phone you’)
- I think I’ll go to bed early. (not ‘I go to bed’)

Do not use I’ll … for something you decided before (⇒ Units 26–27):

- I’m working tomorrow. (not ‘I’ll work’)
- There’s a good film on TV tonight. I’m going to watch it. (not ‘I’ll watch’)
- What are you doing at the weekend? (not ‘What will you do’)

C  Shall I …?  Shall we …?

Shall I/we …? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?

- It’s very warm in this room. Shall I open the window?
- ‘Shall I phone you this evening?’  ‘Yes, please.’
- I’m going to a party tonight. What shall I wear?

- It’s a nice day. Shall we go for a walk?
- Where shall we go for our holidays this year?
- ‘Let’s go out this evening.’  ‘OK, what time shall we meet?’

What are you doing tomorrow? ⇒ UNIT 26  I’m going to … ⇒ UNIT 27  will/shall (1) ⇒ UNIT 28
Let’s ⇒ UNIT 52
EXERCISES

29.1 Complete the sentences. Use I'll (I will) + one of these verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>carry</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>eat</th>
<th>send</th>
<th>show</th>
<th>sit</th>
<th>stay</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>My bag is very heavy.</td>
<td>I'll carry it for you.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Enjoy your holiday.</td>
<td>Thank you.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I don't want this banana.</td>
<td>I don't want it.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Do you want a chair?</td>
<td>No, it's OK.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Did you phone Jenny?</td>
<td>Oh no, I forgot.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Are you coming with me?</td>
<td>No, I don't think so.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>How do you use this camera?</td>
<td>Give it to me and.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

29.2 Complete the sentences. Use I think I'll ... or I don't think I'll ... + one of these verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>buy</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>play</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>It's cold today.</td>
<td>I don't think I'll go out.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>I'm hungry.</td>
<td>I think I'll have something to eat.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I feel tired.</td>
<td>I don't think I'll play tennis.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>This camera is too expensive.</td>
<td>I don't think I'll buy it.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

29.3 Which is right?

1 I phone / I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? I'll phone is right
2 I haven't done the shopping yet. I do / I'll do it later.
3 I like sport. I watch / I'll watch a lot of sport on TV.
4 I need some exercise. I think I go / I'll go for a walk.
5 Jim is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
6 'This letter is for Rose.' OK. I give / I'll give / I'm going to give it to her.
7 A: Are you doing / Will you do anything this evening?
   B: Yes, I'm going / I'll go out with some friends.

29.4 Write sentences with Shall I ... ? Choose words from Box A and Box B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>A turn on</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>B some sandwiches</th>
<th>the television</th>
<th>the light</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>It's very warm in this room.</td>
<td>Shall I turn on the light?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>This programme isn't very good.</td>
<td>Shall I open the window?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I'm hungry.</td>
<td>Shall I make some sandwiches?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>It's dark in this room.</td>
<td>Shall I turn off the television?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

29.5 Write sentences with Shall we ... ? Choose words from Box A and Box B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>A what</th>
<th>where</th>
<th>B buy</th>
<th>invite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Let's go out tonight.</td>
<td>OK, what time shall we meet?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Let's have a holiday.</td>
<td>OK,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Let's spend some money.</td>
<td>OK,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Let's have a party.</td>
<td>OK,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
might

A

Where are you going for your holidays?

I'm not sure. I might go to New York.

He might go to New York.
(= it is possible that he will go to New York)

It might rain.
(= it is possible that it will rain)

might + infinitive (might go / might be / might rain etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>might (not)</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>come etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B

I might … = it is possible that I will …:

• I might go to the cinema this evening. (= it is possible that I will go)
• A: When is Barbara going to phone you?
   B: I don’t know. She might phone this afternoon.
• Take an umbrella with you. It might rain.
• Buy a lottery ticket. You might be lucky. (= perhaps you will be lucky)
• ‘Are you going out tonight?’ ‘I might.’ (= I might go out)

Study the difference:

• I’m playing tennis tomorrow. (sure)
  I might play tennis tomorrow. (possible)
• Barbara is going to phone later. (sure)
  Barbara might phone later. (possible)

C

The negative is might not:

• I might not go to work tomorrow. (= it is possible that I will not go)
• Sue might not come to the party. (= it is possible that she will not come)

D

may

You can use may in the same way. I may … = I might …:

• I may go to the cinema this evening. (= I might go)
• Sue may not come to the party. (= Sue might not come)

May I …? = Is it OK to … / Can I … ?:

• May I ask a question? (= Can I ask?)
• ‘May I sit here?’ ‘Yes, of course.’

will ⇒ UNITS 28-29  can ⇒ UNIT 31
30.1 Write sentences with *might*.

1. (it's possible that I'll go to the cinema) 
   I *might go to the cinema.*

2. (it's possible that I'll see you tomorrow) 
   I *might see you tomorrow.*

3. (it's possible that Ann will forget to phone) 
   I *might forget to phone.*

4. (it's possible that it will snow today) 
   I *might snow today.*

5. (it's possible that I'll be late tonight) 
   I *might be late tonight.*

Write sentences with *might not*.

6. (it's possible that Mary will not be here) 
   I *might not be here.*

7. (it's possible that I won't have time to meet you) 
   I *might not have time to meet you.*

30.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with *I might*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fish</th>
<th>go away</th>
<th>Italy</th>
<th>Monday</th>
<th>new car</th>
<th>taxi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Where are you going for your holidays?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. What are you doing at the weekend?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. When will you see Ann again?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. What are you going to have for dinner?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How are you going to get home tonight?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I hear you won some money. What are you going to do with it?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I'm not sure. I *might go to Italy.*
I don't know. I *might go to the cinema.*
I'm not sure. I *might go out this evening.*
I don't know. I *might go shopping.*
I'm not sure. I *might watch television.*
I haven't decided yet. I *might get home tonight.*

30.3 You ask Bill questions about his plans. Sometimes he is sure but usually he is not sure.

1. Are you playing tennis tomorrow? Yes, in the afternoon.
3. Are you going to get up early? McC, perhaps.
4. Are you going to be out tomorrow morning? No, I'm not.
5. Will you be at home tomorrow morning? Maybe.
6. Are you going to watch television? I *might.*
7. Are you going out in the afternoon? Yes, I *am.*

Now write about Bill. Use *might* where necessary.

1. He's playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.
2. He *might go out this evening.*
3. He...
4. He...
5. He...
6. He...
7. He...
8. He...

30.4 Write three things that you might do tomorrow.

1. 
2. 
3. 
can and could

I can do something = I know how to do it or it is possible for me to do it:
- I can play the piano. My brother can play the piano too.
- Sarah can speak Italian but she can't speak Spanish.
- 'Can you swim?' 'Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer.'
- 'Can you change twenty pounds?' 'I'm sorry, I can't.'
- I'm having a party next week but Paul and Jenny can't come.

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use could/couldn't:
- When I was young, I could run very fast.
- Before Anna came to Britain, she couldn't understand much English. Now she can understand everything.
- I was tired last night but I couldn't sleep.
- I had a party last week but Paul and Jenny couldn't come.


We use Can you … ? or Could you … ? when we ask people to do things:
- Can you open the door, please? or Could you open the door, please?
- Can you wait a moment, please? or Could you wait … ?

We use Can I have … ? or Could I have … ? to ask for something:
- (in a shop) Can I have these postcards, please? or Could I have … ?

Can I … ? or Could I … ? = is it OK to do something?
- Tom, can I borrow your umbrella? or Tom, could I borrow your umbrella?
- (on the phone) Hello, can I speak to Gerry, please? or … could I speak … ?
EXERCISES

31.1 Ask Steve if he can do these things:

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use I can or I can't.

7 I ............................................... 9 ............................................... 11 ............................................... 

8 ............................................... 10 ............................................... 12 ............................................... 

31.2 Complete these sentences. Use can or can't + one of these verbs:

come find hear see speak

1 I'm sorry but we .............................. to your party next Saturday.
2 I like this hotel room. You ..................................... the mountains from the window.
3 You are speaking very quietly. I ..................................... you.
4 Have you seen my bag? I ..................................... it.
5 Catherine got the job because she ..................................... five languages.

31.3 Complete these sentences. Use can't or couldn't + one of these verbs:

eat decide find go go sleep

1 I was tired but I ..................................... 
2 I wasn't hungry yesterday. I ..................................... my dinner.
3 Ann doesn't know what to do. She ..................................... 
4 I wanted to speak to Martin yesterday but I ..................................... him.
5 Jim ..................................... to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.
6 Paula ..................................... to the meeting last week. She was ill.

31.4 What do you say in these situations? Use can or could. Use the words in brackets (...).

1 (open) ..................................... 
2 (pass) ..................................... 
3 (turn off) ..................................... 

4 (have) ..................................... 
5 (give) ..................................... 
6 (borrow) .....................................
must  mustn’t  needn’t

B  Use must when you think it is necessary to do something:
- The windows are very dirty. I must clean them.
- It’s a fantastic film. You must see it.
- We must go to the bank today. We haven’t got any money.

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use had to … (not must):
- We had to go to the bank yesterday. (not ‘We must go … yesterday’)
- I had to walk home last night. There were no buses. (not ‘I must walk’)

C  mustn’t (= must not)
I mustn’t (do something) = it is necessary not to do it, it is the wrong thing to do:
- I must hurry. I mustn’t be late.
- I mustn’t forget to phone Julia.
  (= I must remember to phone her)
- Be happy! You mustn’t be sad. (= don’t be sad)
- You mustn’t touch the pictures.
  (= don’t touch the pictures)

D  needn’t (= need not)
I needn’t (do something) = it is not necessary to do it, I don’t need to do it:
- I needn’t clean the windows. They aren’t very dirty.
- You needn’t go to the bank today. I can give you some money.

You can also say don’t need to … (= needn’t):
- I don’t need to clean the windows.
- You don’t need to go to the bank today.

Compare needn’t and mustn’t:
- You needn’t go. You can stay here if you want.
- You mustn’t go. You must stay here.
**EXERCISES**

**32.1** Complete the sentences. Use **must** + one of these verbs:

**be go go learn meet wash win**

1. We **must go** to the bank today. We haven’t got any money.
2. Marilyn is a very interesting person. You __________________________ her.
3. My hands are dirty. I __________________________ them.
4. You __________________________ to drive. It will be very useful.
5. I __________________________ to the post office. I need some stamps.
6. The game tomorrow is very important for us. We __________________________.
7. You can’t always have things immediately. You __________________________ patient.

**32.2** Put in **I must** or **I had to**.

1. **I had to** go to the bank yesterday to get some money.
2. It’s late. __________________________ go now.
3. I don’t usually work on Saturdays but last Saturday __________________________ work.
4. __________________________ get up early tomorrow. I’ve got a lot to do.
5. I went to London by train last week. The train was full and __________________________ stand all the way.
6. I was nearly late for my appointment this morning. __________________________ run to get there on time.
7. I forgot to phone David yesterday. __________________________ phone him later today.

**32.3** Complete the sentences. Use **mustn’t** or **needn’t** + one of these verbs:

**clean forget hurry lose wait write**

1. The windows aren’t very dirty. You __________________________ them.
2. We have a lot of time. We __________________________
3. Keep these documents in a safe place. You __________________________ them.
4. I’m not ready yet but you __________________________ for me. You can go now and I’ll come later.
5. We __________________________ to turn off the lights before we leave.
6. I __________________________ the letter now. I can do it tomorrow.

Find the sentences with the same meaning.

| 1. We can leave the meeting early. | A. We must stay until the end. |
| 2. We must leave the meeting early. | B. We couldn’t stay until the end. |
| 3. We mustn’t leave the meeting early. | C. We can’t stay until the end. |
| 4. We needn’t leave the meeting early. | D. We needn’t stay until the end. |
| 5. We had to leave the meeting early. | E. We can stay until the end. |

**32.5** Put in **must** / **had to** / **mustn’t** / **needn’t**.

1. You __________________________ go. You can stay here if you want.
2. It’s a fantastic film. You __________________________ see it.
3. We’ve got enough food, so we __________________________ go shopping.
4. We didn’t have any food yesterday, so we __________________________ go shopping.
5. I want to know what happened. You __________________________ tell me.
6. You __________________________ tell Sue what happened. I don’t want her to know.
7. I __________________________ hurry or I’ll be late.
8. ‘Why were you so late?’ ‘I __________________________ wait half an hour for a bus.’
9. We __________________________ decide now. We can decide later.
should

should + infinitive (should do / should watch etc.):

| I/we/you/they             | should   | do stop  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have / have / have</td>
<td>shouldn’t</td>
<td>go watch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A

(You) **should** do something = it is a good thing to do, it is the right thing to do:
- Tom **should go** to bed earlier. He goes to bed very late and he’s always tired.
- It’s a good film. You **should go** and see it.
- When you play tennis, you **should** always **watch** the ball.

B

(You) **shouldn’t** do something = it is *not* a good thing to do. **Shouldn’t** = should not:
- Tom **shouldn’t go** to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You **shouldn’t watch** TV so much.

C

We often use **think** with **should**:

**I think … should … :**
- I think Carol **should buy** some new clothes.
  (= I think it is a good idea.)
- It’s late. **I think I should go** home now.
- A: Shall I buy this coat?
  B: Yes, I think you should.

**I don’t think … should … :**
- I don’t think you **should work** so hard.
  (= I don’t think it is a good idea.)
- I don’t think we **should go** yet. It’s too early.

**Do you think … should … ?:**
- Do you think I should buy this hat?
- What time do you think we should go home?

D

**Must** is stronger than **should**:
- It’s a **good** film. You **should** go and see it.
- It’s a **fantastic** film. You **must** go and see it.

E

Another way to say **should** … is **ought to** …:
- It’s a good film. You **ought to go** and see it. (= you should go)
- I think Carol **ought to buy** some new clothes. (= Carol should buy)
**EXERCISES**

### 33.1
Complete the sentences. Use **you should** + one of these verbs:

- **clean**
- **go**
- **take**
- **visit**
- **watch**
- **wear**

1. When you play tennis, **you should** watch the ball.
2. It’s late and you’re very tired. **you should** go to bed.
3. **you should** brush your teeth twice a day.
4. If you have time, **you should** visit the Science Museum. It’s very interesting.
5. **you should** wear a seat belt.
6. It’s too far to walk from here to the station. **you should** take a taxi.

### 33.2
Write about the people in the pictures. Use **He/She shouldn’t** ...

1. [Picture of person watching TV] **She shouldn’t** watch TV too much.
2. [Picture of person eating] **He** shouldn’t eat too much.
3. [Picture of person working] **You** should work too hard.
4. [Picture of person driving] **You** shouldn’t drive too fast.

### 33.3
You ask a friend for advice. Write questions with **Do you think I should** ...

1. You are in a shop. You are trying on a jacket. **(buy?)**
   - You ask your friend: **Do you think I should buy this jacket?**
2. You can’t drive. **(learn?)**
   - You ask your friend: **Do you think I should learn to drive?**
3. You don’t like your job. **(get another job?)**
   - You ask your friend: **Do you think I should get another job?**
4. You are going to have a party. **(invite Gary?)**
   - You ask your friend: **Do you think I should invite Gary?**

### 33.4
Write sentences with **I think** **should** ... or **I don’t think** **should** ...

1. **It’s late.** (go home now) **I think** we should go home now.
2. **That coat is too big for you.** (buy it) **I don’t think** you should buy it.
3. **You don’t need your car.** (sell it)
4. **Diane needs a rest.** (have a holiday)
5. **Sally and Colin are too young.** (get married)
6. **You’re not well this morning.** (go to work)
7. **James isn’t well today.** (go to the doctor)
8. **The hotel is too expensive for us.** (stay there)

### 33.5
What do you think? Write sentences with **should.**

1. **I think** everybody should learn another language.
2. **I think** everybody
3. **I think**
4. **I don’t think**
5. **I think I should**
I have to …

I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>do</th>
<th>to do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>wear etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I have to go to the dentist.
- Jill starts work at 7 o'clock, so she has to get up at 6.
- You have to pass a test before you can get a driving licence.

The past (yesterday / last week etc.) is had to … :

- I was late for work yesterday. I had to go to the dentist.
- We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.

In questions and negatives we use do/does (present) and did (past):

**present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>do</th>
<th>has to …?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>have to …?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>does</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>did</th>
<th>have to …?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>have to …?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>didn’t have to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- What time do you have to go to the dentist tomorrow?
- Does Jill have to work on Sundays?
- Why did they have to leave the party early?

I don’t have to (do something) = it is not necessary to do it:

- I’m not working tomorrow, so I don’t have to get up early.
- Ian doesn’t have to work very hard. He’s got an easy job.
- We didn’t have to wait very long for the bus.

**must and have to**

Use must or have to when you say what you think is necessary, when you give your opinion:

- It’s a fantastic film. You must see it. or You have to see it.

When you are not giving your personal opinion, use have to (not must):

- Jill won’t be at work this afternoon. She has to go to the doctor. (this is not my personal opinion – it is a fact)
- In many countries, men have to do military service. (this is not my opinion – it is the law in those countries)
EXERCISES

34.1 Complete the sentences. Use have to or has to + one of these verbs:

**do  read  speak  travel  wear**

1. My eyes are not very good. I have to wear glasses.
2. At the end of the course all the students have to take a test.
3. Mary is studying literature. She has to read a lot of books.
4. Albert doesn’t understand much English. You have to speak very slowly to him.
5. Kate is not often at home. She has to travel a lot in her job.

34.2 Complete the sentences. Use have to or had to + one of these verbs:

**answer  buy  change  go  walk**

1. We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.
2. It’s late. I have to go now. I’ll see you tomorrow.
3. I went to the supermarket after work yesterday. I had to buy some food.
4. This train doesn’t go all the way to London. You have to get off at Bristol.
5. We did an exam yesterday. We had to answer six question out of ten.

34.3 Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

1. I have to get up early tomorrow. **What time do you have to get up?**
2. George had to wait a long time. **How long...?**
3. Liz has to go somewhere. **Where?**
4. We had to pay a lot of money. **How much...?**
5. I have to do some work. **What exactly...?**

34.4 Write sentences with don’t/doesn’t/didn’t have to . . . .

1. Why are you going out? You don’t have to go out.
2. Why is Ann waiting? She doesn’t have to wait.
3. Why did you get up early? You didn’t have to get up.
4. Why is Paul working so hard? He doesn’t have to work so hard.
5. Why do you want to leave now? We don’t have to leave.

34.5 Which is correct? Sometimes must and have to are both correct.

1. It’s a great film. You must see / have to see it. *both are correct*
2. In many countries, men must do / have to do military service. *have to do is correct*
3. You can’t park your car here for nothing. You must pay / have to pay .
4. I didn’t have any money with me last night, so I must borrow / had to borrow some.
5. I eat too much chocolate. I really must stop / have to stop.
6. ‘Why is Paula going now?’ ‘She must meet / has to meet somebody.’
7. What’s wrong? You must tell / have to tell me. I want to help you.

34.6 Write some things that you (or your friends or family) have to do or had to do.

1. (every day) I have to travel ten miles every day...
2. (every day) ..............................................................
3. (tomorrow) ..............................................................
4. (yesterday) ..............................................................
A Would you like ... ? = Do you want ... ?

We use Would you like ... ? to offer things:

- A: Would you like some coffee?
  B: No, thank you.
- A: Would you like a chocolate?
  B: Yes, please.
- A: What would you like, tea or coffee?
  B: Tea, please.

We use Would you like to ... ? to invite somebody:

- Would you like to go for a walk?
- A: Would you like to have dinner with us on Sunday?
  B: Yes, I'd love to. (= I would love to have dinner with you)
- What would you like to do this evening?

B I'd like ... is a polite way to say 'I want'. I'd like = I would like:

- I'm thirsty. I'd like a drink.
- (in a tourist office) I'd like some information about hotels, please.
- I'd like to see the film on television this evening.

C Would you like ... ? and Do you like ... ?

Would you like ... ? / I'd like ...

Would you like some tea? = Do you want some tea?

- A: Would you like to go to the cinema tonight? (= Do you want to go tonight?)
  B: Yes, I'd love to.
- I'd like an orange, please. (= Can I have an orange?)
- What would you like to do next weekend?

Do you like ... ? / I like ...

Do you like tea? = Do you think tea is nice?

- A: Do you like going to the cinema? (in general)
  B: Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.
- I like oranges. (in general)
- What do you like to do at weekends?
EXERCISES

35.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use Would you like ... ?

1. Would you like a chocolate?

2. ________________________________

3. ________________________________

4. ________________________________

5. ________________________________

6. ________________________________

35.2 What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use Would you like to ... ?

1. You want to go to the cinema tonight. Perhaps Sue will go with you. (go)
   You say: Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?

2. You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Sue will play too. (play)
   You say: ________________________________

3. You've got some holiday photographs. Sue hasn't seen them yet. (see)
   You say: ________________________________

4. You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Sue will go. (go)
   You say: ________________________________

5. It's raining and Sue is going out. She hasn't got an umbrella but you have one. (borrow)
   You say: ________________________________

35.3 Which is right?

1. 'Do you like / Would you like a chocolate?' 'Yes, please.' Would you like is right

2. 'Do you like / Would you like bananas?' 'Yes, I love them.'

3. 'Do you like / Would you like an ice-cream?' 'No, thank you.'

4. 'What do you like / would you like to drink?' 'A glass of water, please.'

5. 'Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?' 'Not now. Perhaps later.'

6. I like / I'd like tomatoes but I don't eat them very often.

7. What time do you like / would you like to have dinner this evening?

8. 'Do you like / Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thanks. I'm not hungry.'

9. 'Do you like / Would you like your new job?' 'Yes, I'm enjoying it.'

10. I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep now.
UNIT 36
there is  there are

A

There's a man on the roof. There's a train at 10.30. There are seven days in a week.

singular

there is ...  (there's)
is there ... ?
there is not ...  (there isn't or there's not)

plural

there are ...
are there ... ?
there are not ...  (there aren't)


• There's a big tree in the garden.
• There's a good film on TV tonight.
• A: Have you got any money?
  B: Yes, there's some in my bag.
• A: Excuse me, is there a hotel near here?
  B: Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.
• We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.

• There are some big trees in the garden.
• There are a lot of accidents on this road.
• A: Are there any letters for me today?
  B: Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.
• This restaurant is very quiet. There aren't many people here.
• How many players are there in a football team?
• There are 11 players in a football team.

B

there is and it is

there is

There's a book on the table.
(not 'It's a book on the table."

it is

I like [this book]. It's interesting.
(it = this book)

Compare:

• 'What's that noise?' 'It's a train.' (it = that noise)
  There's a train at 10.30. It's a fast train. (it = the 10.30 train)
• There's a lot of salt in this soup.
  I don't like this soup. It's too salty. (it = this soup)
36.1 Kenham is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences about Kenham with There is/are or There isn’t/aren’t.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 a castle?</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 any restaurants?</td>
<td>Yes (a lot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 a hospital?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 a swimming pool?</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 any cinemas?</td>
<td>Yes (two)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 a university?</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 any big hotels?</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 There isn’t a castle.
2 There are a lot of restaurants.
3
4
5
6
7

36.2 Write sentences about your town (or a town that you know). Use There is/are/isn’t/aren’t.

1 There are a few restaurants...
2 There’s a big park...
3...
4...
5...
6...
7...

36.3 Put in there is / there isn’t / is there / there are / there aren’t / are there.

1 Kenham isn’t an old town. There aren’t any old buildings.
2 Look! a photograph of your brother in the newspaper!
3 ‘Excuse me, a bank near here?’ ‘Yes, at the end of the street.’
4 five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.
5 ‘How many students in the class?’ ‘Twenty.’
6 ‘Can we take a photograph?’ ‘No, a film in the camera.’
7 a bus from the city centre to the airport? ‘Yes. Every 20 minutes.’
8 any problems? ‘No, everything is OK.’
9 nowhere to sit down. any chairs.

36.4 Write sentences with There are .... Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>seven</th>
<th>twenty-six</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nine</td>
<td>thirty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fifteen</td>
<td>fifty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>letters</th>
<th>days</th>
<th>September</th>
<th>the solar system</th>
<th>the USA</th>
<th>a-week</th>
<th>a rugby team</th>
<th>the English alphabet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>players</td>
<td>days</td>
<td>planets</td>
<td>states</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 There are seven days in a week.
2 ...
3 ...
4 ...
5 ...
6 ...

36.5 Put in there’s / is there / it’s / is it.

1 ‘There’s a train at 10.30.’ ‘Is it a fast train?’
2 I’m not going to buy this shirt. very expensive.
3 ‘What’s wrong?’ something in my eye.
4 a red car outside the house. yours?
5 anything on television tonight? ‘Yes, a film at 8.15.’
6 ‘What’s that building?’ a school.
7 a restaurant in this hotel? ‘No, I’m afraid not.’
A there was / there were (past)

There is a train every hour.
The time now is 11.15.
There was a train at 11 o’clock.

Compare:

there is/are (present)
- There is a good film on TV tonight.
- We are staying at a very big hotel. There are 250 rooms.
- Are there any letters for me this morning?
- I’m hungry but there isn’t anything to eat.

there was/were (past)
- There was a good film on TV last night.
- We stayed at a very big hotel. There were 250 rooms.
- Were there any letters for me yesterday?
- When I got home, I was hungry but there wasn’t anything to eat.

B there has been / there have been (present perfect)

Look! There’s been an accident.
(there’s been = there has been)
This road is very dangerous. There have been many accidents.

Compare there was (past):
- There was an accident last night.
(not "There has been an accident last night.")

For past simple and present perfect see Unit 20.

C there will be

- Do you think there will be a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- The manager of the company is leaving, so there will be a new manager soon.
- I’m going away tomorrow. I’ll do my packing today because there won’t be time tomorrow.
(there won’t be = there will not be)
37.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty but what was in the room last week? Write sentences with *There was...* or *There were...* + the words in the list.

- an armchair  - a carpet  - some flowers  - a sofa
- some books  - a clock  - three pictures  - a small table

**Last Week**

1. *There was a clock* on the wall near the window.
2. .................................................. on the floor.
3. .................................................. on the wall near the door.
4. .................................................. in the middle of the room.
5. .................................................. on the table.
6. .................................................. on the shelves.
7. .................................................. in the corner near the door.
8. .................................................. opposite the door.

**Now**

37.2 Put in *there was / there wasn't / was there / there were / there weren't / were there.*

1. I was hungry but *there wasn't* anything to eat.
2. *Were there* any letters for me yesterday?
3. .................................................. a football match on TV last night. Did you see it?
4. 'We stayed at a very nice hotel.' 'Did you? .................................................. a swimming pool?'
5. 'Did you buy any eggs?' 'No, .................................................. any in the shop.'
6. *The wallet was empty.* .................................................. any money in it.
7. .................................................. many people at the meeting? 'No, very few.'
8. We didn't visit the museum. .................................................. enough time.
9. I'm sorry I'm late. .................................................. a lot of traffic.
10. Twenty years ago .................................................. many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

37.3 Put in *there is / are / was / were / has been / have been / will be.*

1. *There was* a good film on TV yesterday evening.
2. .................................................. 24 hours in a day.
3. .................................................. a party at the club last Friday but I didn't go.
4. 'Where can I buy a newspaper?' ' .................................................. a shop at the end of the street.'
5. 'Why are those policemen outside the bank?' ' .................................................. a robbery.'
6. When we arrived at the cinema, .................................................. a long queue to see the film.
7. When you arrive tomorrow, .................................................. somebody at the station to meet you.
8. Ten years ago .................................................. 500 children at the school. Now .................................................. more than a thousand.
9. Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It's very different now. .................................................. a lot of changes.
10. I think everything will be OK. I don't think .................................................. any problems.
We use it for time/day/distance/weather:

**time**
- What time is it?
- It's half past ten.
- It's late.
- It's time to go home.

**day**
- What day is it?
- It's Thursday.
- It's 16 March.
- It was my birthday yesterday.

**distance**
- It's three miles from our house to the city centre.
- How far is it from London to Bristol?
- It's a long way from here to the station.
- We can walk home. It isn't far.

We use far in questions (is it far?) and negatives (it isn't far).
We use a long way in positive sentences (it's a long way).

**weather**
- It's raining. It isn't raining. Is it snowing?
- It rains a lot here. It didn't rain yesterday.
- Does it snow very often?
- It's warm/hot/cold/fine/cloudy/windy/sunny/foggy/dark etc.
- It's a nice day today.

Compare it and there:
- It rains a lot in winter.
- There is a lot of rain in winter.
- It was very windy.
- There was a strong wind yesterday.

It's nice to ... etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>It's</th>
<th>easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe</th>
<th>to ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- It's nice to see you again. (it = to see you again)
- It's impossible to understand her. (it = to understand her)
- It wasn't easy to find your house. (it = to find your house)

Don't forget it:
- It's raining again. (not 'Is raining again')
- Is it true that you are going away? (not 'Is true that ...')

**UNIT 36**

[84]
EXERCISES

38.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use It's ....

1. It's raining...
2.
3.
4. ........................................
5. ........................................
6. ........................................

38.2 Put in it (it's) or is it.

1. What time...is it...?
2. We must go now. ................. very late.
3. ................. true that Bill can fly a helicopter?
4. 'What day ........... today? Tuesday?' 'No, ........... Wednesday.'
5. ................. ten kilometres from the airport to the city centre.
6. ................. possible to phone you at your office?
7. 'Do you want to walk to the restaurant?' 'I don't know. How far ........... ?'
8. ................. Linda's birthday today. She's 27.
9. I don't believe it! ................. impossible.

38.3 Write questions with How far ...?

1. (here / the station) How far is it from here to the station?
2. (the hotel / the beach) How far is it from the hotel to the beach?
3. (New York / Washington) How far is it from New York to Washington?
4. (your house / the airport) How far is it from your house to the airport?

38.4 Put in it or there.

1. It.... rains a lot in winter.
2. There.... was a strong wind yesterday.
3. ........... was a nice day yesterday.
4. We can't go skiing. ........... isn't any snow.
5. ........... 's hot in this room. Open a window.
6. I was afraid because ........... was very dark.
7. ........... was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
8. ........... 's a long way from here to the nearest shop.

38.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>easy</th>
<th>dangerous</th>
<th>work in this office</th>
<th>get-up early</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>nice</td>
<td>visit different places</td>
<td>go out alone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impossible</td>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>see you again</td>
<td>make friends</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. If you go to bed late, it's difficult to get up early in the morning.
2. Hello, Jill. ............................................................. How are you?
3. ............................................................. There is too much noise.
4. Everybody is very nice at work. .............................................................
5. I like travelling. .............................................................
6. A lot of cities are not safe. ............................................................. at night.
I am I don’t etc.

A

She isn’t tired but he is.
(he is = he is tired)

He likes tea but she doesn’t.
(she doesn’t = she doesn’t like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat words (‘he is tired’, ‘she doesn’t like tea’).

You can use these verbs in the same way:

- I haven’t got a car but my sister has. (= my sister has got a car)
- A: Please help me.
  B: I’m sorry. I can’t. (= I can’t help you)
- A: Are you tired?
  B: I was, but I’m not now. (= I was tired but I’m not tired now)
- A: Do you think Ann will phone this evening?
  B: She might. (= she might phone)
- A: Are you going now?
  B: Yes, I’m afraid I must. (= I must go)

You cannot use ’m/’s/’ve etc. (short forms) in this way. You must use am/is/have etc.:

- She isn’t tired but he is. (not … but he’s)

But you can use isn’t / haven’t / won’t etc. (negative short forms):

- My sister has got a car but I haven’t.
- ‘Are you and Jim working tomorrow?’ ‘I am but Jim isn’t.’

B

You can use I am / I’m not etc. after Yes and No:

- ‘Are you tired?’ ‘Yes, I am. / No, I’m not.’
- ‘Will Alan be here tomorrow?’ ‘Yes, he will. / No, he won’t.’
- ‘Is there a bus to the airport?’ ‘Yes, there is. / No, there isn’t.’

C

We use do/does for the present simple: (⇒ Units 6–7)

- I don’t like hot weather but Sue does. (= Sue likes hot weather)
- Sue works hard but I don’t. (= I don’t work hard)
- ‘Do you enjoy your work?’ ‘Yes, I do.’

We use did for the past simple: (⇒ Unit 12)

- A: Did you and John enjoy the film?
  B: I did but John didn’t. (= I enjoyed it but John didn’t enjoy it)
- ‘I enjoyed the film.’ ‘I did too.’ (= I enjoyed it too)
- ‘Did it rain yesterday?’ ‘No, it didn’t.’
EXERCISES

39.1 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (is/have/can etc.) each time.

1 Kate wasn’t hungry but we were.
2 I’m not married but my brother is.
3 Bill can’t help you but I can.
4 I haven’t seen the film but Tom has.
5 Diane won’t be here but Chris will.
6 You weren’t late but I was.

39.2 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn’t/haven’t/can’t etc.).

1 My sister can play the piano but I can’t.
2 Ann is working today but I’m not.
3 I was working but my friends weren’t.
4 I’m ready to go but Tom isn’t.
5 I’ve got a key but Sally hasn’t.

39.3 Complete these sentences with do/does/did or don’t/doesn’t/didn’t.

1 I don’t like hot weather but Sue does.
2 Sue likes hot weather but I don’t.
3 My mother wears glasses but my father doesn’t.
4 You don’t know Paul very well but I do.
5 I didn’t enjoy the party but my friends didn’t.
6 I don’t watch TV much but Peter does.
7 Kate lives in London but her parents don’t.
8 You had a shower this morning but I didn’t.

39.4 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people. (See the example.)

1 I didn’t go out last night but my friends did.
2 I like . . . but . . .
3 I don’t . . . but . . .
4 I’m . . .
5 I haven’t . . .

39.5 Put in a verb, positive or negative.

1 ‘Are you tired?’ ‘I was earlier but I’m not now.’
2 John is happy today but he wasn’t yesterday.
3 The post office isn’t open yet but the shops were.
4 I haven’t got a video camera but I know somebody who has.
5 I would like to help you but I’m afraid I can’t.
6 I don’t usually go to work by car but I did yesterday.
7 A: Have you ever been to the United States?
   B: No, but Sandra has. She went there on holiday last year.
8 ‘Do you and Ann watch TV a lot?’ ‘I do but Ann doesn’t.’
9 I’ve been invited to the party but Kate hasn’t.
10 ‘Do you think Diane will pass her exams?’ ‘Yes, I’m sure she will.
11 ‘Are you going out this evening?’ ‘I don’t know for sure.’

39.6 Answer these questions about yourself. Use Yes, I have. / No, I’m not. etc.

1 Are you British? No, I’m not.
2 Have you got a car? You’ve got a car.
3 Do you feel well? I don’t feel well.
4 Is it snowing? It isn’t snowing.
5 Are you hungry? I’m hungry.
6 Do you like classical music? I like classical music.
7 Will you be in Paris tomorrow? I’ll be in Paris tomorrow.
8 Have you ever been in hospital? I’ve been in hospital.
9 Did you buy anything yesterday? You didn’t buy anything yesterday.
10 Were you asleep at 3 a.m.? No, I wasn’t asleep at 3 a.m.
Have you? Are you? Don’t you? etc.

You can say have you? / is it? / can’t he? etc. to show that you are interested or surprised:
- ‘You’re late.’ ‘Oh, am I? I’m sorry.’
- ‘I was ill last week.’ ‘Were you? I didn’t know that.’
- ‘It’s raining again.’ ‘Is it? It was sunny ten minutes ago.’
- ‘There’s a letter for you.’ ‘Is there? Where is it?’
- ‘Bill can’t drive.’ ‘Can’t he? I didn’t know that.’
- ‘I’m not hungry.’ ‘Aren’t you? I am.’
- ‘Sue isn’t at work today.’ ‘Isn’t she? Is she ill?’

Use do/does for the present simple and did for the past simple:
- ‘I speak four languages.’ ‘Do you? Which ones?’
- ‘Tom doesn’t eat meat.’ ‘Doesn’t he? Does he eat fish?’
- ‘Linda got married last week.’ ‘Did she? Really?’

Question tags
You can use have you? / is it? / can’t she? etc. at the end of a sentence.
These ‘mini-questions’ are question tags.

a positive sentence → a negative question tag
a negative sentence → a positive question tag

positive → negative
- It’s a beautiful day, isn’t it?
- Sally lives in London, doesn’t she?
- You closed the window, didn’t you?
- Those shoes are nice, aren’t they?
- Tom will be here soon, won’t he?

negative → positive
- That isn’t your car, is it?
- You haven’t met my mother, have you?
- Sally doesn’t smoke, does she?
- You won’t be late, will you?

Yes, it’s lovely.
Yes, that’s right.
Yes, I think so.
Yes, very nice.
Yes, probably.

No, my car is white.
No, I haven’t.
No, she doesn’t.
No, I’m never late.
EXERCISES

40.1 Answer with Do you? / Doesn't she? / Did they? etc.

1. I speak four languages. Do you? Which ones?
2. I work in a bank. I work in a bank too.
3. I didn't go to work yesterday. Were you ill?
4. Jill doesn't like me. Why not?
5. You look tired. I feel fine.
6. Julia phoned me last night. What did she say?

40.2 Answer with Have you? / Haven't you? / Did she? / Didn't she? etc.

1. I've bought a new car. What make is it?
2. Tim doesn't eat meat. Does he eat fish?
3. I've lost my key. When did you last have it?
4. Sue can't drive. She should learn.
5. I was born in Italy. I didn't know that.
6. I didn't sleep well last night. Was the bed uncomfortable?
7. There's a film on TV tonight. Are you going to watch it?
8. I'm not happy. Why not?
9. I met Paula last week. How is she?
10. Margaret works in a factory. What kind of factory?
11. I won't be here next week. Where will you be?
12. The clock isn't working. It was working yesterday.

40.3 Complete these sentences with a question tag (isn't it? / haven't you? etc.).

1. It's a beautiful day, isn't it? Yes, it's lovely.
2. These flowers are nice, aren't they? Yes, what are they?
3. Judy was at the party, wasn't she? Yes, but I didn't speak to her.
4. You've been to Paris, haven't you? Yes, many times.
5. You speak German, don't you? Yes, but not very well.
6. Martin looks tired, doesn't he? Yes, he works very hard.
7. You'll help me, will you? Yes, of course I will.

40.4 Complete these sentences with a question tag, positive (is it? / do you? etc.) or negative (isn't it? / don't you? etc.).

1. You haven't got a car, have you? No, I can't drive.
2. You aren't tired, are you? No, I feel fine.
3. Carol is a very nice person, isn't she? Yes, everybody likes her.
4. You can play the piano, can you? Yes, but I'm not very good.
5. You don't know Mike's sister, do you? No, I've never met her.
6. Sally went to university, didn't she? Yes, she studied economics.
7. The film wasn't very good, was it? No, it was terrible.
8. Ann lives near you, doesn't she? That's right. In the same street.
9. You won't tell anybody what I said, will you? No, of course not.
too/either  so am I / neither do I etc.

A  too and either

We use *too* and *either* at the end of a sentence.

We use *too* after a positive verb:
- A: I'm happy.
  
  B: I'm happy *too*.
- A: I enjoyed the film.
  
  B: I enjoyed it *too*.
- Mary is a doctor. Her husband *is* a doctor *too*.

We use *either* after a negative verb:
- A: I'm not happy.
  
  B: I'm *not* happy *either*. (*not* 'I'm not ... too')
- A: I can't cook.
  
  B: I can't *either*. (*not* 'I can't too')
- Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers *either*.

B  so am I / neither do I etc.

so am I = I am too
so have I = I have too (etc.):
- A: I'm working.
  
  B: So am I. (= I'm working too)
- A: I *was* late for work today.
  
  B: So *was* John. (= John was late too)
- A: I *work* in a bank.
  
  B: So *do* I.
- A: We *went* to the cinema last night.
  
  B: Did you? So *did* we.
- A: I'd like to go to Australia.
  
  B: So *would* I.

neither am I = I'm not either
neither can I = I can't either (etc.):
- A: I haven't got a key.
  
  B: Neither have I. (= I haven't either)
- A: Ann can't cook.
  
  B: Neither can Tom. (= Tom can't either)
- A: I won't (= will not) be here tomorrow.
  
  B: Neither will I.
- A: I never go to the cinema.
  
  B: Neither do I.

You can also use Nor ... (= Neither ...):
- A: I'm not married.
  
  B: Nor *am* I. or Neither *am* I.

Note that we say: So *am* I (not 'So I am'), Neither *have* I (not 'Neither I have').

I am / I don't etc. ⇒ UNIT 39
EXERCISES

41.1 Put in too or either.

1. I'm happy.  
   I'm happy __________.  
2. I'm not hungry.  
   I'm not hungry __________.  
3. I'm going out.  
   I'm going out __________.  
4. It rained on Saturday.  
   It rained on Sunday __________.  
5. Jenny can't drive a car.  
   She can't ride a bicycle __________.  
6. I don't like shopping.  
   I don't like shopping __________.  
7. Jane's mother is a teacher.  
   Her father is a teacher __________.

41.2 Answer with So ... I (So am I / So do I / So can I etc.).

1. I went to bed late last night.  
   So did I.  
2. I'm thirsty.  
   I've just had dinner.  
3. I need a holiday.  
   I'll be late tomorrow.  
4. I was very tired this morning.  

Answer with Neither.

- I can't go to the party.  
- I didn't phone Alex last night.  
- I haven't got any money.  
- I'm not going out tomorrow.  
- I don't know what to do.

41.3 You are talking to Maria. Write true sentences about yourself. Where possible, use So ... I or Neither ... I. Look at these examples carefully:

I'm tired. 
you can answer: So am I. or I'm not.

I don't work hard. 
you can answer: Neither do I. or I do.

1. I'm learning English.  
   I can ride a bicycle.  
2. I'm not American.  
   I like cooking.  
3. I don't like cold weather.  
   I slept well last night.  
4. I've never been to Scotland.  
   I don't write letters very often.  
5. I'm going out tomorrow evening.  
   I haven't got a headache.  
6. I didn't watch TV last night.  
   I often go to the cinema.
### Unit 42: isn’t haven’t don’t etc. (negatives)

#### A

We use **not (n’t)** in negative sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am</td>
<td>am not (’m not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>is not (isn’t or ’s not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>are not (aren’t or ’re not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>was not (wasn’t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>were not (weren’t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>have not (haven’t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has</td>
<td>has not (hasn’t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>will not (won’t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>cannot (can’t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>could not (couldn’t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>must not (mustn’t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should</td>
<td>should not (shouldn’t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>would not (wouldn’t)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I’m not tired.
- It isn’t (or It’s not) raining.
- They aren’t (or They’re not) here.
- Julian wasn’t hungry.
- The shops weren’t open.
- I haven’t finished my work.
- Sue hasn’t got a car.
- We won’t be here tomorrow.
- George can’t drive.
- I couldn’t sleep last night.
- I mustn’t forget to phone Ann.
- You shouldn’t work so hard.
- I wouldn’t like to be an actor.

#### B

**don’t/doesn’t/didn’t**

**Present simple negative:**  
I/we/you/they **do not (don’t)**  
he/she/it **does not (doesn’t)**  
work/live/go etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I want to go out.</td>
<td>I <strong>don’t want</strong> to go out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They work hard.</td>
<td>They <strong>don’t work</strong> hard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liz plays the guitar.</td>
<td>Liz <strong>doesn’t play</strong> the guitar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My father likes his job.</td>
<td>My father <strong>doesn’t like</strong> his job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I got up early this morning.</td>
<td>I <strong>didn’t get</strong> up early this morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They worked hard yesterday.</td>
<td>They <strong>didn’t work</strong> hard yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We played tennis.</td>
<td>We <strong>didn’t play</strong> tennis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diane had a bath.</td>
<td>Diane <strong>didn’t have</strong> a bath.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Don’t …**

- **Look!**  
  → **Don’t look!**
- **Wait** for me.  
  → **Don’t wait** for me.

**Sometimes do is the main verb (don’t do / doesn’t do / didn’t do):**

- Do something!  
  → **Don’t do** anything!
- Sue does a lot at weekends.  
  → Sue **doesn’t do** much at weekends.
- I did what you said.  
  → I **didn’t do** what you said.
EXERCISES

42.1 Make these sentences negative.
1 He’s gone away. He hasn’t gone away.
2 They’re married.
3 I’ve had dinner.
4 It’s cold today.
5 We’ll be late.
6 You should go.

42.2 Make these sentences negative. Use don’t/doesn’t/didn’t.
1 She saw me. She didn’t see me.
2 I like cheese.
3 They understood.
4 He lives here.
5 Go away!
6 I did the shopping.

42.3 Make these sentences negative.
1 She can swim. She can’t swim.
2 They’ve arrived.
3 I went to the bank.
4 He speaks German.
5 We were angry.
6 He’ll be pleased.
7 Phone me tonight.
8 It rained yesterday.
9 I could hear them.
10 I believe you.

42.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn’t/haven’t/don’t etc.).
1 They aren’t rich. They haven’t got much money.
2 ‘Would you like something to eat?’ ‘No, thank you. I’m hungry.’
3 I can’t find my glasses. Have you seen them?
4 George write letters very often. He prefers to use the phone.
5 We can walk to the station from here. It’s very far.
6 ‘Where’s Jill?’ ‘I don’t know. I haven’t seen her today.’
7 Be careful! Don’t fall!
8 We went to the cinema last night. I didn’t like the film very much.
9 I’ve been to Spain many times but I haven’t been to Portugal.
10 Julia be here tomorrow. She’s going away.
11 ‘Who broke that window?’ ‘Not me. I don’t do it.’
12 We didn’t see what happened. We aren’t looking at the time.

42.5 You ask Gary some questions. His answers are always ‘Yes’ or ‘No’. Write sentences about Gary, positive or negative.

GARY

Are you married?
Do you live in London?
Were you born in London?
Do you like London?
Would you like to live in the country?
Can you drive?
Have you got a car?
Do you read newspapers?
Are you interested in politics?
Do you watch TV most evenings?
Did you watch TV last night?
Did you go out last night?

No. 1 He isn’t married.
Yes. 2 He lives in London.
No. 3
Yes. 4
No. 5
Yes. 6
No. 7
Yes. 8
No. 9
Yes. 10
No. 11
Yes. 12 [93]
is it ...?  have you ...?  do they ...?  etc.
(questions 1)

**A**

**positive:**

you | are | You are eating.

**question:**

are | you | Are you eating?  What are you eating?

In questions, the first verb (is/are/have etc.) is before the subject:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive verb + subject</th>
<th>question verb + subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am late.</td>
<td>Am I late?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That seat is free.</td>
<td>Is that seat free?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She was angry.</td>
<td>Why was she angry?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David has gone.</td>
<td>Where has David gone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have got a car.</td>
<td>Have you got a car?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They will be here soon.</td>
<td>When will they be here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paula can swim.</td>
<td>Can Paula swim?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Be careful with word order: the subject is after the first verb:

- Where has David gone?  (not ‘Where has gone David?’)
- Are those people waiting for something?  (not ‘Are waiting ... ?’)
- When was the telephone invented?  (not ‘When was invented ... ?’)

**B**

do ...?  does ...?  did ...?

**Present simple questions:**

do I/we/you/they | work/live/go etc.

**Past simple questions:**

did you/she/they (etc.) work/live/go etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They work hard.</td>
<td>Do they work hard?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You watch television.</td>
<td>How often do you watch television?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chris works hard.</td>
<td>Does Chris work hard?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She gets up early.</td>
<td>What time does she get up?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They worked hard.</td>
<td>Did they work hard?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You had dinner.</td>
<td>What did you have for dinner?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She got up early.</td>
<td>What time did she get up?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes do is the main verb (do you do / did he do etc.):

- What do you usually do at weekends?
- ‘What does your brother do?’  ‘He works in a bank.’
- ‘I broke my finger last week.’  ‘How did you do that?’  (not ‘How did you that?’)

**C**

Why isn’t ...?  Why don’t ...? etc. (Why + negative):

- Where’s John?  Why isn’t he here?  (not ‘Why he isn’t here?’)
- Why can’t Paula come to the meeting tomorrow?  (not ‘Why Paula can’t ...?’)
- Why didn’t you phone me last night?

present simple questions ⇒ UNIT 7  past simple questions ⇒ UNIT 12  questions 2-3 ⇒ UNITS 44-45  what/which/how ...? ⇒ UNITS 46-47
EXERCISES

43.1 Write questions.

1 I can swim. (and you?) Can you swim?
2 I work hard. (and Jim?) Does Jim work hard?
3 I was late this morning. (and you?) I cm you swim?
4 I've got a key. (and Ann?) (and you?) I cm you swim?
5 I'll be here tomorrow. (and you?) (and you?) I cm you swim?
6 I'm going out this evening. (and Paul?) (and you?) I cm you swim?
7 I like my job. (and you?) I cm you swim?
8 I live near here. (and Linda?) I cm you swim?
9 I enjoyed my holiday. (and you?) I cm you swim?
10 I had a shower this morning. (and you?) I cm you swim?

43.2 You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the full questions.

1 Have you got a car? (have / a car?) Have you got a car?
2 Do you use it a lot? (use / a lot?) Do you use it a lot?
3 Did you use it yesterday? (use / yesterday?) Did you use it yesterday?
4 Are you a good driver? (enjoy driving?) Are you a good driver?
5 Have you ever had an accident? (a good driver?) Have you ever had an accident?
6 No, I haven't.

43.3 Put the words in the right order. All the sentences are questions.

1 Where has David gone? (has / gone / where / David?) Where has David gone?
2 Is Rachel working today? (working / Rachel / is / today?) Is Rachel working today?
3 What are the children doing? (the children / what / are / doing?) What are the children doing?
4 How much cheese did you make? (made / is / how / cheese?) How much cheese did you make?
5 Is your sister coming to the party? (to the party / coming / is / your sister?) Is your sister coming to the party?
6 Don't tell the truth! (you / the truth / tell / don't / why?) Don't tell the truth!
7 Have your guests arrived yet? (your guests / have / yet / arrived?) Have your guests arrived yet?
8 Has your car been damaged in the accident? (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?) Has your car been damaged in the accident?
9 Why didn't Ann go to work? (to work / Ann / why / go / didn't?) Why didn't Ann go to work?
10 How often does it rain? (it rains / sometimes / How often does it rain?) How often does it rain?

43.4 Complete the questions.

1 I want to go out. Where do you want to go?
2 Why aren't they going?
3 Ann and Paul aren't going to the party. Why aren't they going?
4 I'm reading. What are you doing?
5 Sue went to bed early. What did you do last night?
6 My parents are going on holiday. When are they going on holiday?
7 I met Tom a few days ago. Where did you meet Tom?
8 Tina has gone away. Why did Tina go away?
9 I can't come to the party. Why can't you come to the party?
10 I need some money. How much money do you need?
11 Angela doesn't like me. How often do you see Angela?
12 I did the shopping. Why did you do the shopping?
Who saw you?  Who did you see?  (questions 2)

Sylvia saw Paul.
Who saw Paul?
Sylvia. (Sylvia saw him.)
Who did Sylvia see?
Paul. (She saw Paul.)

B
In these questions, who/what is the subject:
- Who lives in this house? (= somebody lives in it - who?) (not 'Who does live?')
- What happened? (= something happened - what?) (not 'What did happen?')
- What is happening? (What's = What is)
- Who's got my key? (Who's = Who has)

In these questions, who/what is the object:
- Who did you meet yesterday? (= you met somebody - who?)
- What did Paul say? (= Paul said something - what?)
- Who are you phoning?
- What was Sylvia wearing?

Compare:
- George likes oranges. → Who likes oranges? = George.
  What does George like? = Oranges.
- Jill won some money. → Who won some money? = Jill.
  What did Jill win? = A hundred pounds.

C
Use who for people (somebody). Use what for things, ideas etc. (something):
- Who is your favourite singer?
- What is your favourite song?
EXERCISES

44.1 Make questions with who or what. In these questions, who/what is the subject.

1. Somebody broke the window.  
2. Something fell off the shelf.  
3. Somebody wants to see you.  
4. Somebody took my umbrella.  
5. Something made me ill.  
6. Somebody is coming.

Who broke the window?  
What ___________________________ me?

44.2 Make questions with who or what (subject or object).

1. I bought something.  
2. Somebody lives in this house.  
3. I phoned somebody.  
4. Something happened last night.  
5. Somebody knows the answer.  
6. Somebody did the washing-up.  
7. Jill did something.  
8. Something woke me up.  
9. Somebody saw the accident.  
10. I saw somebody.  
11. Somebody has got my pen.  
12. This word means something.

What did you buy?
Who lives in this house?

You want the missing information (XXXX). Write questions with who or what.

1. I lost XXXX yesterday but fortunately XXXX found it and gave it back to me.

What did you lose?
Who found it?

2. XXXX phoned me last night. She wanted XXXX.

3. I needed some advice, so I asked XXXX. He said XXXX.

4. I hear that XXXX got married last week. XXXX told me.

5. I met XXXX on my way home this evening. She told me XXXX.

6. Steve and I played tennis yesterday. XXXX won. After the game we XXXX.

7. It was my birthday last week and I had some presents. XXXX gave me a book and Catherine gave me XXXX.
Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)

A

Julia is talking to somebody.

Who is she talking to?

In questions beginning Who ...? / What ...? / Where ...? / Which ...?, prepositions (to/from/with etc.) usually go at the end:

- 'Where are you from?' 'I'm from Thailand.'
- 'John was afraid.' 'What was he afraid of?'
- 'Who do these books belong to?' 'They're mine.'
- Tom's father is in hospital.' 'Which hospital is he in?'
- 'Kate is going on holiday.' 'Who with?' / 'Who is she going with?'
- 'I want to talk to you.' 'What about?' / 'What do you want to talk to me about?'

B

What is it like? / What are they like? etc.

What's (= What is) it like? = tell me something about it – is it good or bad, big or small, old or new? etc.

When we say 'What is it like?', like is a preposition. It is not the verb like ('Do you like your new house?' etc.).

- A: There's a new restaurant in our street.
  B: What's it like? Is it good?
  A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.

- A: What's your new teacher like?
  B: She's very good. We learn a lot.

- A: I met Linda's parents yesterday.
  B: Did you? What are they like?
  A: They're very friendly.

- A: Did you have a nice holiday? What was the weather like?
  B: It was lovely. The sun shone every day.
EXERCISES

45.1 You want the missing information (XXXX). Write questions with who or what.

1. The letter is from XXXX. Who is the letter from?
2. I’m looking for a XXXX. What do you need?
3. I went to the cinema with XXXX. Who did you go with?
4. The film was about XXXX. What was the film about?
5. I gave the money to XXXX. To whom did you give the money?
6. The book was written by XXXX. Who wrote the book?

45.2 Complete the questions for the pictures. Use one of these verbs + a preposition:

listen look talk talk wait write


45.3 Write questions beginning Which ... ?

1. Tom’s father is in hospital. Which hospital is he in?
2. We stayed at a hotel. Where did you stay?
3. Jack plays for a football team. Which football team does Jack play for?
4. I went to school in this town. Which school did you go to?

45.4 You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there.
Ask questions with What is/are ... like?

1. (the roads) What are the roads like? 2. (the food) What is the food like? 3. (the people) What are the people like? 4. (the weather) What is the weather like?

45.5 Ask questions with What was/were ... like?

1. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather. What was the weather like?
2. Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film.
3. Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons.
4. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.
### What ...? Which ...? How ...?

#### A

**What + noun** (What colour ...? / What kind ...? etc.)
- What **colour** is your car?
- What **size** is this shirt?
- What **time** is it?
- What **kind** of job do you want? (or What **type** of job ...? / What **sort** of job ...?)

**What without a noun:**
- What's your favourite **colour**?
- What do you want to do this evening?

#### B

**Which + noun** (things or people):
- Which **train** did you catch – the 9.50 or the 10.30?
- Which **doctor** did you see – Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

We use *which* without a noun for things, not people:
- Which is bigger – Canada or Australia?

We use *who* for people (without a noun):
- Who is taller – Bill or Gerry? (not ‘Which is taller?”)

#### C

**What or which?**
We use *which* when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps 2, 3 or 4):
- We can go this way or that way.
- Which way shall we go?
- There are four umbrellas here.
- Which is yours?

**What is more general:**
- What is the capital of Argentina?
- What sort of music do you like?

Compare:
- What **colour** are his eyes? (not ‘Which colour?”)
- Which **colour** do you prefer, pink or yellow?
- What is the longest river in the world?
- Which is the longest river – the Mississippi, the Amazon or the Nile?

#### D

**How ...?**
- ‘How was the party last night?’ ‘It was great.’
- ‘How do you usually go to work?’ ‘By bus.’

You can use **how + adjective/adverb** (how tall / how old / how often etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How</th>
<th>tall are you?</th>
<th>1 metre 70.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>big is the house?</td>
<td>‘Not very big.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>old is your mother?</td>
<td>‘She’s 45.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>far is it from here to the airport?</td>
<td>‘Five kilometres.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>often do you use your car?</td>
<td>‘Every day.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>long have they been married?</td>
<td>‘Ten years.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>much was the meal?</td>
<td>‘Twenty pounds.’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
46.1 Write questions with what.

1. I’ve got a new TV set. (make?) What make is it?
2. I want a job. (kind?) What kind of job do you want?
3. I’ve got a new sweater. (colour?) What is it?
4. I got up early this morning. (time?) When do you get up?
5. I like music. (type?) What kind of music do you like?
6. I want to buy a car. (kind?) What kind of car do you want?

46.2 Complete the questions. Use Which ... ?

1. Which way shall we go?
2. Which is yours?
3. Do you want to see?
4. Goes to the centre?

46.3 Put in what/which/who.

1. What is that man’s name?
2. Which way shall we go? Left or right?
3. You can have tea or coffee. Do you prefer?
4. ‘Day is it today?’ ‘Friday.’
5. This is a nice house. Room is yours?
6. Is your favourite sport?
7. Is more expensive, meat or fish?
8. Is older, Ann or George?
9. Kind of camera have you got?
10. A: Mary has got three cameras. B: Camera does she use most?
11. Nationality are you?

46.4 Complete the questions with How + adjective or adverb (high/long etc.).

1. How high is Mount Everest?
   Nearly 9000 metres.
2. How is it to the station?
   It’s about two kilometres from here.
3. How is Helen?
   She’s 26.
4. How do the buses run?
   Every ten minutes.
5. How is the water in the pool?
   Two metres.
6. How have you lived here?
   Nearly three years.

46.5 Write questions with How ... ?

1. Are you 1 metre 70? 1.75? 1.80? How tall are you?
2. Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three? How much is it?
3. Are you 20 years old? 22? 25? How old are you?
4. Did you spend £10? £15? £20? How much did you spend?
5. Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never? How often?
6. Is it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow? 1500? 2000? How far is it?
A

How long does it take by plane from London to Madrid?

It takes two hours.

- How long does it take by train from London to Manchester?
  - It takes two hours by train from London to Manchester.
- How long does it take by car from your house to the station?
  - It takes ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

B

I started reading the book on Monday.
I finished it on Wednesday evening.

It took me three days to read it.

- How long does it take to fly from London to Madrid?
- It takes a long time to learn a language.
- It doesn’t take long to cook an omelette.
- It takes me 20 minutes to get to work.
- ‘I came by train.’ ‘Did you? How long did it take (to get here)?’
- It took Tom an hour to do his shopping.
- Did it take you a long time to find a job?
- How long will it take me to learn to drive?
- It will take us an hour to cook the dinner.
EXERCISES

47.1
Look at the pictures and write questions with **How long ... ?**

1. How long does it take by plane from London to Amsterdam?
2. .................................................................
3. .................................................................
4. .................................................................

47.2
How long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.

1. fly from your city/country to London
   *It takes two hours to fly from Madrid to London.*
2. fly from your city/country to New York
3. study to be a doctor in your country
4. walk from your home to the nearest shop
5. get from your home to the nearest airport

47.3
Write questions with **How long did it take ... ?**

1. (She found a place to live.)
   *How long did it take her to find a place to live?*
2. (I walked to the station.)
3. (He cleaned the windows.)
4. (I learnt to ski.)
5. (They repaired the car.)

47.4
Read the situations and write sentences with **It took ...**

1. I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.
   *It took me three days to read the book.*
2. We walked home last night. We left at 10 o’clock and we arrived home at 10.20.
3. I learnt to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.
4. Mark drove to London yesterday. He left home at 8 o’clock and got to London at 10.
5. Linda began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.
6. *(write a true sentence about yourself)*
Do you know where ... ?
I don’t know what ... etc.

We say:
Where is Paula?

but:
Do you know where Paula is?
(not ‘Do you know where is Paula?’)

In the same way we say:
I know
I don’t know
Can you tell me

Who are those people? but
How old is Linda?
What time is it?
Where can I go?
How much is this camera?
When are you going away?
Where have they gone?
What was Ann wearing?

Do you know
Can you tell me

I know
I don’t know

I don’t remember

Do you know

Do you know if

Do you know whether

Is Jack at home?

Have they got a car?

Can Brian swim?

Do they live near here?

Did anybody see you?

You can use if or whether in these sentences:

• Do you know if they’ve got a car? or Do you know whether they’ve got a car?
EXERCISES

48.1 Answer these questions with \textbf{I don't know where/when/why} ... etc.

1. Have your friends gone home? \hspace{2cm} (where) \hspace{1cm} I don't know where they've gone.
2. Is Kate in her office? \hspace{2cm} (where) \hspace{1cm} I don't know ...
3. Is the castle very old? \hspace{2cm} (how old) \hspace{1cm} ...
4. Will Paul be here soon? \hspace{2cm} (when) \hspace{1cm} ...
5. Was he angry because I was late? \hspace{2cm} (why) \hspace{1cm} ...
6. Has Sally lived here a long time? \hspace{2cm} (how long) \hspace{1cm} ...

48.2 Complete the sentences.

1. (How do aeroplanes fly?) \hspace{2cm} Do you know \hspace{1cm} how aeroplanes fly?
2. (Where does Susan work?) \hspace{2cm} I don't know ...
3. (What did Peter say?) \hspace{2cm} Do you remember ...
4. (Why did he go home early?) \hspace{2cm} I don't know ...
5. (What time does the film begin?) \hspace{2cm} Do you know ...
6. (How did the accident happen?) \hspace{2cm} I don't remember ...

48.3 Which is right?

1. Do you know what time is it / it is? \hspace{2cm} Do you know what time it is? is right
2. Why are you / you are going away?
3. I don't know where are they / they are going.
4. Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?
5. Where do you want / you want to go for your holidays?
6. Do you know what do elephants eat / elephants eat?

48.4 Write questions with \textbf{Do you know if} ... ?

1. (Have they got a car?) \hspace{2cm} Do you know if they've got a car?
2. (Are they married?) \hspace{2cm} Do you know...
3. (Does Sue know Bill?) \hspace{2cm} Do you know...
4. (Will George be here tomorrow?) \hspace{2cm} Do you know...
5. (Did he pass his exam?) \hspace{2cm} Do you know...

48.5 Write questions beginning \textbf{Do you know} ... ?

1. (What does Ann want?) \hspace{2cm} Do you know what Ann wants?
2. (Where is Paula?) \hspace{2cm} Do ...
3. (Is she working today?) \hspace{2cm} Do ...
4. (What time does she start work?) \hspace{2cm} Do ...
5. (Are the shops open tomorrow?) \hspace{2cm} Do ...
6. (Where do Sarah and Tim live?) \hspace{2cm} Do ...
7. (Did they go to Ann's party?) \hspace{2cm} Do ...

48.6 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. Do you know why \textbf{the bus was late} ... ?
2. Do you know what time ... ?
3. Excuse me, can you tell me where ... ?
4. I don't know what ... ?
5. Do you know if ... ?
She said that ... He told me that ...

Last week you went to a party. A lot of your friends were there. Here are some things they said to you:

**DIANE**

I’m enjoying my new job.

My father isn’t very well.

**SARAH**

We’re going to buy a house.

**TOM**

I have to go early.

**MARTHA**

I can’t find a job.

**STEVE**

I’ll phone you.

**ANGELA**

I don’t like my job.

My son doesn’t like school.

You look tired.

**MIKE**

I feel fine.

Today you meet Paul. You tell him about the party. You tell Paul what your friends said:

Diane said that she was enjoying her new job.

She said that her father wasn’t very well.

Sarah and Tim said that they were going to buy a house.

Peter said that he had to go early.

He said that his sister had gone to Australia.

Ann said that she couldn’t find a job.

Steve said that he would phone me.

Angela said that she didn’t like her job.

She said that her son didn’t like school.

You can say:

- He said that he was tired. or He said he was tired. *(without ‘that’)*
- Ann told me that she didn’t like her job. or Ann told me she didn’t like her job.
EXERCISES

49.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with He/She/They said (that) . . .

1. I’ve lost my watch.
   He said he had lost his watch.

2. I’m very busy.

3. I can’t go to the party.

4. I have to go out.

5. I’m learning Russian.

6. I don’t feel very well.

7. We’ll be home late.

8. I’ve just come back from holiday.

9. I’m going to buy a computer.

10. We haven’t got a key.

49.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.

1. I met Diane last week. She said she was enjoying her new job.

2. Betty didn’t want anything to eat. She said.

3. I wanted to borrow Mike’s ladder but he said.

4. Sally was invited to the party but she said.

5. Sharon told me she didn’t want the picture. She said.

6. Martin has just gone away on holiday. He said.

7. I was looking for Robert. Linda said.

8. ‘Why did Steve stay at home?’ ‘He said.’

9. ‘Has Mary gone out?’ ‘I think so.’ She said.

49.3 Put in say/said or tell/told.

1. He said he was tired.

2. What did she tell you?

3. Ann . . . . . . . . . she didn’t like Peter.

4. Jack . . . . . . . . . me that you were ill.

5. Please don’t . . . . Jim what happened.

6. Did Lucy . . . . . . . . . she would be late?

7. The woman . . . . . . . . she was a reporter.

8. The woman . . . . us she was a reporter.

9. They asked me a lot of questions but I didn’t . . . . . . . . . . . them anything.

10. They asked me a lot of questions but I didn’t . . . . . . . . . . . anything.
**A**

*work/go/be etc. (infinitive)*

We use the infinitive with *will/can/must etc.*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>Ann <em>will be</em> here soon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shall</td>
<td>Shall I <em>open</em> the window?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>might</td>
<td>I <em>might phone</em> you later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>may</td>
<td>May I <em>sit here</em>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>I <em>can’t meet</em> you tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>Could you <em>pass</em> the salt, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>It’s late. I <em>must go</em> now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should</td>
<td>You <em>shouldn’t work</em> so hard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>Would you <em>like</em> some coffee?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Units 28–29
- Unit 30
- Unit 31
- Unit 32
- Unit 33
- Unit 35

*do/does (present simple)*

Do you *work*?  
They *don’t work* very hard.  
Tina *doesn’t know* many people.  
How much does it *cost*?

- Units 6–7
- Unit 12

*did (past simple)*

What time *did the train* leave?  
We *didn’t sleep* well.

- Units 6–7
- Unit 12

**B**

*to work/to go/to be etc. (to + infinitive)*

| (I’m) going to... | I’m going to *play* tennis tomorrow.  
| (I) have to... | I have to *go* now.  
| (I) want to... | Do you *want to go* out?  
| (I) would like to... | I’d like to *talk* to you. |
| (I) used to... | Dave *used to work* in a factory. |

- Unit 27
- Unit 34
- Unit 51
- Unit 35
- Unit 25

**C**

*working/going/playing etc.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb phrase</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| *am/is/are + -ing* (present continuous) | Please be quiet. I’m *working*.  
Tom *isn’t working* today.  
What time *are you going* out? |
| *was/were + -ing* (past continuous) | It *was raining*, so we didn’t go out.  
What *were you doing* when the phone rang? |

- Units 3–4, 8, 26
- Units 13–14
EXERCISES

50.1 Complete the sentences. Write: ... phone Paul... or ... phone Paul.

1. I'll ... phone Paul ...
2. I'm going ... phone Paul ...
3. Can you ... phone Paul?
4. Shall I ... phone Paul?
5. I'd like ...

6. Do you have ...?
7. You should ...
8. I want ...
9. I might ...
10. You must ...

50.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive (work/go etc.) and sometimes you need -ing (working/going etc.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do/doing</th>
<th>get/getting</th>
<th>sleep/sleeping</th>
<th>watch/watching</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eat/eating</td>
<td>go/going</td>
<td>stay/staying</td>
<td>wear/wearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly/flying</td>
<td>listen/listening</td>
<td>wait/waiting</td>
<td>work/working</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I'm working ...
2. I'm feeling tired today. I didn't sleep very well last night.
3. What time do you usually go up in the morning?
4. 'Where are you going?' 'To the bank.'
5. Did you watch television last night?
6. Look at that plane! It's flying very low.
7. You can turn off the radio. I'm not watching it.
8. They didn't do anything because they weren't hungry.
9. My friends were waiting for me when I arrived.
10. 'Does Sharon always wear glasses?' 'No, only for reading.'
11. 'What are you doing this evening?' 'I'm staying at home.'

50.3 Put the verb in the correct form. Choose:
- the infinitive (work/go etc.) or to ... (to work/to go etc.) or -ing (working/going etc.)

1. Shall I open the window? (open)
2. It's late. I have to go now. (go)
3. Ann isn't working this week. She's on holiday. (work)
4. I'm tired. I don't want to go out. (go)
5. It might rain, so take an umbrella with you. (rain)
6. What time do you have to leave tomorrow morning? (leave)
7. I'm afraid I can't help you. (help)
8. My brother is a student. He's studying physics. (study)
9. Would you like to go on a trip round the world? (go)
10. When you saw Janet, what was she wearing? (wear)
11. When you go to London, where are you going to stay? (stay)
12. I'm hungry. I must have something to eat. (have)
13. 'Where's George?' 'He's having a bath.' (have)
14. I used to have a car but I sold it last year. (have)
15. He spoke very quietly. I couldn't hear him. (hear)
16. You don't look well. I don't think you should go to work today. (go)
17. I don't know what he said. I wasn't listening to him. (listen)
18. I'm sorry I'm late. I had to make a phone call. (make)
19. I want to know what happened. (know) You must tell me. (tell)
20. May I use your phone? (use)
to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

A verbs + to ... (I want to do)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>want</th>
<th>plan</th>
<th>decide</th>
<th>try</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hope</td>
<td>expect</td>
<td>offer</td>
<td>forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td>promise</td>
<td>refuse</td>
<td>learn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- What do you want to do this evening?
- It's not very late. We don't need to go home yet.
- Tina has decided to sell her car.
- You forgot to switch off the light when you went out.
- My brother is learning to drive.
- I tried to read my book but I was too tired.

B verbs + -ing (I enjoy doing)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>enjoy</th>
<th>stop</th>
<th>suggest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mind</td>
<td>finish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I enjoy dancing. (not ‘enjoy to dance’)
- I don't mind getting up early.
- Has it stopped raining?
- Sonia suggested going to the cinema.

C verbs + -ing or to...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>like</th>
<th>love</th>
<th>start</th>
<th>continue</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>hate</td>
<td>begin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Do you like getting up early? or Do you like to get up early?
- I prefer travelling by car. or I prefer to travel by car.
- Ann loves dancing. or Ann loves to dance.
- I hate being late. or I hate to be late.
- It started raining. or It started to rain.

D would like to ... (etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>would like</th>
<th>would love</th>
<th>would prefer</th>
<th>would hate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Julia would like to meet you. (not ‘would like meeting’)
- I'd love to go to Australia. (I'd = I would)
- 'Would you like to sit down?' 'No, I'd prefer to stand, thank you.'
- I wouldn't like to be a teacher.
EXERCISES

51.1 Put the verb in the right form, to ... or -ing.

1 I enjoy dancing (dance).
2 What do you want to do (do) tonight?
3 Goodbye! I hope to see you again soon.
4 I learnt to swim (swim) when I was five years old.
5 Have you finished cleaning (clean) the kitchen?
6 I'm tired. I want to go (go) to bed.
7 Do you enjoy visiting (visit) other countries?
8 The weather was nice, so I suggested going (go) for a walk by the river.

9 Where's Bill? He promised to be (be) here on time.
10 I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind waiting (wait).
11 What have you decided to do (do)?
12 George was very angry and refused to speak (speak) to me.
13 Where's Ann? I need to ask (ask) her something.
14 I was very upset and started crying (cry).
15 I'm trying to work (work). Please stop talking (talk).

51.2 Complete the sentences using to ... or -ing. Use one of these verbs:

go help live lose rain read see send take wait walk watch

1 I like London but I wouldn't like to live there.
2 I like taking (OR to take) photographs when I'm on holiday.
3 Linda has a lot of books. She enjoys reading.
4 I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expect to see you.
5 Don't forget to send us a postcard when you're on holiday.
6 'Shall we get a taxi to the cinema?' 'If you like, but it isn't far. I don't mind waiting.'
7 This ring is very beautiful. I'd hate losing it.
8 Julia had a lot to do, so I offered to help her.
9 What shall we do this afternoon? Would you like to go to the beach?
10 When I'm tired in the evenings, I like watching television.
11 'Shall we go now?' 'No, I'd prefer to wait a few minutes.'
12 I'm not going out until it stops raining.

51.3 Complete the answers to the questions.

1 Do you usually get up early?
   Yes, I like getting (OR to get) up early.
2 Do you ever go to museums?
   Yes, I love visiting museums.
3 Do you often write letters?
   No, I don't like writing letters.
4 Have you ever been to New York?
   No, but I'd love to visit one day.
5 Do you often travel by train?
   Yes, I enjoy travelling by train.
6 Shall we eat at home or go to a restaurant?
   I don't mind eating at home, but I'd prefer to go to a restaurant.

51.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use to ... or -ing.

1 I enjoy reading books.
2 I don't like cooking.
3 If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like to go for a walk.
4 When I'm on holiday, I like to relax.
5 I don't mind if you're late, but please don't be too late.
6 I wouldn't like to stay here any longer.
I want you to ...  I told you to ...

A

The woman wants to go.
The man doesn't want the woman to go.
He wants her to stay.

We say:
I want {you somebody Ann} to do something

- I want you to be happy. (not ‘I want that you are happy’)
- They didn’t want anybody to know their secret.
- Do you want me to lend you some money?

We use would like in the same way:
- Would you like me to lend you some money?

B

We also use this structure (verb + somebody + to ...) with:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>someoeny</th>
<th>to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>Sue</td>
<td>asked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advise</td>
<td>What do you advise</td>
<td>you to be careful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect</td>
<td>I didn’t expect</td>
<td>them to be here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persuade</td>
<td>We persuaded George to come with us.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>I taught my brother to swim.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C

I told you to ... / I told you not to ...

→ Ann told me to wait for her.
→ Paul told Sue not to wait for him.

D

make and let

After make and let, we do not use to:
- He’s very funny. He makes me laugh. (not ‘makes me to laugh’)
- At school our teacher made us work very hard.
- Sue let me use her computer because mine wasn’t working (not ‘let me to use’)

You can say Let’s ... (= Let us) when you want people to do things with you:
- Come on! Let’s dance.
- ‘Shall we go out tonight?’ ‘No, I’m tired. Let’s stay at home.’
EXERCISES

52.1 Write sentences beginning I want you ... / I don't want you ... / Do you want me ...?

1 (you must come with me) I want you to come with me...
2 (listen carefully) I want ..........................................................
3 (please don't be angry) I don't ..............................................
4 (shall I wait for you?) Do you ..............................................
5 (don't phone me tonight) ...................................................
6 (you must meet Sarah) .....................................................

52.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1 Come on! Let's go to the cinema! It's a good film.
2 Where's the station? Turn left after the bridge.
3 I'm not well. You should go to the doctor.
4 Can you help me?
5 I'm busy now. Come back in ten minutes.
6 Can I use your phone?
7 Don't phone before 8 o'clock.
8 Do you play the piano?

1 Dan persuaded me to go to the cinema.
2 I wanted to get to the station. A woman told
3 Brian wasn't well. I advised
4 Linda had a lot of luggage. She asked
5 I was busy. I told
6 I wanted to make a phone call. Paul let
7 Sue is going to phone later. I told
8 Ann's mother taught

52.3 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes to is necessary (to go / to wait etc.); sometimes to is not necessary (go/wait etc.).

arrive borrow get go go make repeat tell think wait

1 Please stay here. I don't want you to go...
2 I didn't hear what she said, so I asked her to say it.
3 'Shall we begin?' 'No, let's to wait a few minutes.'
4 Are they already here? I expected them to come much later.
5 Kevin's parents didn't want him to get married.
6 I want to stay here. You can't make me to stay with you.
7 'Is that your bicycle?' 'No, it's John's. He let me to use it.'
8 Mary can't come to the party. She told me to invite you.
9 Would you like a drink? Would you like me to make some coffee?
10 'Ann doesn't like me.' 'What makes you think that?'
I went to the shop to ...

A Paula wanted a newspaper, so she went to the shop.

Why did she go to the shop? To buy a newspaper.

She went to the shop to buy a newspaper.

to ... (to buy / to see etc.) tells us why a person does something:
- 'Why are you going out?' 'To get some bread.'
- Ann went to the station to meet her friend.
- Sue turned on the television to watch the news.
- I'd like to go to Spain to learn Spanish.

money/time to (do something):
- We need some money to buy food.
- I haven't got time to watch television.

B to ... and for ...

to + verb
(to buy / to see etc.)
- I went to the shop to buy a newspaper. (not 'for buy')
- They're going to Scotland to see their friends.
- We need some money to buy food.

for + noun
(for a newspaper / for food etc.)
- I went to the shop for a newspaper.
- They're going to Scotland for a holiday.
- We need some money for food.

C wait for ...
- Please wait for me.
- Are you waiting for the bus?

wait to (do something):
- Hurry up! I'm waiting to go.
- Are you waiting to see the doctor?

wait for (somebody/something) to ... :
- I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone.
- Are you waiting for the doctor to come?
EXERCISES

53.1 Write sentences beginning I went to .... Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the station</th>
<th>the cafe</th>
<th>the supermarket</th>
<th>buy some food</th>
<th>catch a train</th>
<th>get some stamps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. I went to the station to catch a train.
2. I went ..............................................................
3. ..............................................................
4. ..............................................................

53.2 Finish the sentences. Choose from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to open this door</th>
<th>to wake him up</th>
<th>to see who it was</th>
<th>to open the newspaper</th>
<th>to get some fresh air</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. I turned on the television ...to watch the news...
2. Alice sat down in an armchair ..............................................................
3. Do I need a key ?
4. I went for a walk by the river ..............................................................
5. I knocked on the door of David’s room ..............................................................
6. The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window ..............................................................

53.3 Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use to ....

1. I went to the shop ...to buy a newspaper...
2. I’m very busy. I haven’t got time ..............................................................
3. I phoned Ann ..............................................................
4. I’m going out ..............................................................
5. I borrowed some money ..............................................................

53.4 Put in to or for.

1. Paula went to the shop ...to buy some bread.
2. We went to a restaurant ...to have dinner.
3. Robert wants to go to university ...to study economics.
4. I’m going to London ...to have an interview next week.
5. I’m going to London ...to visit some friends of mine.
6. Have you got time ...to have a cup of coffee?
7. I got up late this morning. I didn’t have time ...to wash.
8. Everybody needs money ...to live.
9. The office is very small. There’s space only ...to have a desk and chair.
10. A: Excuse me, are you waiting ...to use the phone?
    B: No, I’m waiting ...to somebody.

53.5 Finish these sentences. Choose from:

John / phone it / to arrive you / tell me the film / begin

1. I can’t go out yet. I’m waiting ...for John to phone...
2. I sat down in the cinema and waited ..............................................................
3. We called an ambulance and waited ..............................................................
4. ‘Do you know what to do?’ ‘No, I’m waiting ..............................................................

[115]
go to ... (go to work / go to London / go to a concert etc.)

- What time do you usually go to work?
- I'm going to France next week.
- Tom didn't want to go to the concert.
- 'Where's Ann?' 'She's gone to bed.'
- I went to the dentist last week.

go to sleep = start to sleep:
- I was very tired and went to sleep quickly.

go home (without to)
- I'm going home now. (not 'going to home')

We're going on holiday next week.
- Children often go on school trips.
- When we were in Scotland, we went on a lot of excursions to different places.
- The workers have gone on strike. (= they are refusing to work)

'Where's Ann?' 'She's gone for a walk.'
- Do you go for a run every day?
- The sea looks nice. Let's go for a swim.
- We went for a drink after work yesterday.
- Shall we go out for a meal? I know a good restaurant.
- They've gone to Scotland for a holiday.
(We say 'on holiday' but 'for a holiday'.)

Are you going shopping this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's go swimming. (or Let's go for a swim.)
- Rachel has a small boat and she often goes sailing.
- I went jogging before breakfast this morning.
EXERCISES

54.1 Put in to/on/for where necessary.

1. I'm going to France next week.
2. Rachel often goes sailing.
3. Sue went to Mexico last year.
4. Would you like to go to the cinema this evening?
5. Jack goes jogging every morning.
6. I'm going out for a walk. Do you want to come?
7. I'm tired because I went to a party last night and went to bed very late.
8. Martin is going on holiday to Italy next week.
9. The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went for a swim.
10. There will be no buses next week because the bus drivers are going on strike.
11. I need some stamps, so I'm going to the post office.
12. It's late. I must go home now.
13. Would you like to go for a tour of the city?
14. Shall we go out for a meal this evening?
15. My parents are going on a cruise this summer.

54.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use go/goes/going/went + -ing.

1. Rachel has a boat. She often goes sailing.
2. Last Saturday Diane went riding.
3. George goes to school every day.
4. Linda is going on holiday next month. She is going to Portugal.
5. Peter is going out later. He has to stay at home.
6. Sheila went to the bank after work yesterday evening.

54.3 Use the words in the box to finish these sentences. Use to/on/for if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>home</th>
<th>shopping</th>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>a-swim</th>
<th>sleep</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a walk</td>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>a-swim</td>
<td>skiing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The sea looks nice. Let's go for a swim.
2. 'Is Ann at home?' 'No, she's gone to the bank to get some money.'
3. I'm going home now. I have to buy some presents.
4. I was very tired last night. I sat down in an armchair and went to bed.
5. I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went home early.
6. We live near the mountains. In winter we go skiing every weekend.
7. Richard has got a horse. He often goes riding.
8. The weather is nice. Shall we go for a walk in the park?
9. A: Are you going soon?
   B: Yes, next month. We're going to France.
get a letter / get a job etc. (get + noun) = receive/buy/fetch/find:

- 'Did you get my letter?' 'Yes, I got it yesterday.' (= receive)
- I like your pullover. Where did you get it? (= buy)
- (on the phone) 'Hello, can I speak to Ann, please?' 'One moment. I'll get her.' (= fetch)
- It's difficult to get a job at the moment. (= find)

also get a bus / a train / a taxi (= take a bus/train etc.):
- 'Did you come here on foot?' 'No, I got the bus.'

get hungry / get cold / get tired etc. (get + adjective) = become:

- If you don't eat, you get hungry.
- Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.
- I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she gets better soon.
- We got very wet because we didn't have an umbrella.

also get married
get dressed (= put your clothes on)
get lost (= lose your way)

- Linda and Frank are getting married soon.
- I got up and got dressed quickly.
- We went for a walk and got lost.

get to a place = arrive:
- I usually get to work before 8.30. (= arrive at work)
- We left London at 10 o'clock and got to Manchester at 12.45.
- How did you get here? By bus?

get home (without to):
- What time did you get home last night?

get in/out/on/off

- Kate got in the car and drove away. (You can also say: Kate got into the car ...)
- A car stopped and a man got out. (but A man got out of the car.)
- We got on the bus outside the hotel and got off in Church Street.
EXERCISES

55.1 Complete these sentences. Use get(s) and choose from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a taxi</th>
<th>my letter</th>
<th>some milk</th>
<th>a doctor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>your jacket</td>
<td>a good salary</td>
<td>a ticket</td>
<td>the job</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I wrote to you last week. Did you **get my letter**?
2 Where did you **get home**? It’s very nice.
3 Quick! This man is ill. We must **get him**.
4 I don’t want to walk home. Let’s **get a taxi**.
5 I had an interview with the manager but I didn’t **get the job**.
6 When you go out, can you **get your jacket**?
7 ‘Are you going to the concert?’ ‘Yes, if I can **get in**.’
8 Margaret has got a well-paid job. She **get a good salary**.

55.2 Complete these sentences. Use getting + one of these words:

dark  late  cold  ready  married

1 Drink your coffee. It’s **getting cold**.
2 Turn on the light. It’s **getting dark**.
3 ‘I’m **getting married** next week.’ ‘Oh, really? Congratulations!’
4 ‘Where’s Sally?’ ‘She’s **getting ready** to go out.’
5 It’s **getting late**. It’s time to go home.

55.3 Complete the sentences. Use get/got + one of these words:

angry  better  hungry  lost  married  nervous  old  wet

1 If you don’t eat, you **get hungry**.
2 Don’t go out in the rain. You’ll **get wet**.
3 My brother **got married** last year. His wife’s name is Julia.
4 Why did you **get nervous** with me? I didn’t do anything wrong.
5 We tried to find the hotel but we **got lost**.
6 Everybody wants to stay young but we **get old**.
7 The beginning of the film wasn’t very good but it **got better**.
8 Most people **get nervous** before examinations.

55.4 Write sentences with I left ... and got to ...

1 home / 7.30 → work / 8.15  I left home at 7.30 and got to work at 8.15.
2 London / 10.15 → Bristol / 11.45  I left London at 10.15 and got to Bristol at 11.45.
3 the party / 11.15 → home / midnight  I left the party at 11.15 and got home at midnight.

4 Write a true sentence about yourself.
   I left...

55.5 Put in got in / got out of / got on / got off.

1 Kate **got in** the car and drove away.
2 I **got on** the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
3 Ann **got off** the car, shut the door and went into a shop.
4 I made a stupid mistake. I **got off** the wrong train.
do and make

A

Do is a general word for actions:

• What are you doing this evening? (not 'What are you making?)
• ‘Shall I open the window?’ ‘No, it’s OK. I’ll do it.’
• Julia’s job is very boring. She does the same thing every day.
• I did a lot of things yesterday.

What do you do? = What's your job?:
• ‘What do you do?’ ‘I work in a bank.’

B

Make = produce/create. For example:

She’s making coffee. He has made a cake. They make umbrellas. It was made in France.

Compare do and make:

• I did a lot of things yesterday. I cleaned my room, I wrote some letters and I made a cake.
• A: What do you do in your free time? Sport? Reading? Hobbies?
  B: I make clothes. I make dresses and jackets. I also make toys for children.

C

Expressions with do

| do                          | I’m doing my driving test next week.
|  | John has just done a training course.
|  | Have the children done their homework?
|  | Ann, could you do me a favour?
|  | I go for a run and do exercises every morning.
|  | I hate doing housework, especially cleaning.
| an exam (examination) / a test | also do the shopping / the washing / the washing-up / the ironing / the cooking etc.:
| a course | • I did the washing but I didn’t do the shopping.
| homework |  |
| (somebody) a favour |  |
| exercises |  |
| housework |  |

D

Expressions with make

| make                          | I’m sorry, I made a mistake.
|  | I must make an appointment to see the doctor.
|  | Excuse me, I have to make a phone call.
|  | Have you made a shopping list?
|  | It’s late. We mustn’t make a noise.
|  | Sometimes I forget to make my bed in the morning.
| a mistake |  |
| an appointment |  |
| a phone call |  |
| a list |  |
| a noise |  |
| a bed: |  |

We say make a film but take a photograph:

• When was this film made? but When was this photograph taken?
EXERCISES

56.1 Put in make/making/made or do/doing/did/done.

1 ‘Shall I open the window?’ ‘No, it’s OK. I’ll do it.’
2 What did you at the weekend? Did you go away?
3 Do you know how to bread?
4 Paper is from wood.
5 Richard didn’t help me. He sat in an armchair and nothing.
6 ‘What do you?’ ‘I’m a doctor.’
7 I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you it?
8 ‘What do they in that factory?’ ‘Shoes.’
9 I some coffee. Would you like some?
10 Why are you angry with me? I didn’t anything wrong.
11 ‘What are you tomorrow afternoon?’ ‘I’m working.’

56.2 What are these people doing?

1 He’s making a cake.
2 They
3 He
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

56.3 Put in make or do in the correct form.

1 I hate  housework, especially cleaning.
2 Why do you always the same mistake?
3 ‘Can you me a favour?’ ‘It depends what it is.’
4 ‘Have you your homework?’ ‘Not yet.’
5 I need to see the dentist but I haven’t an appointment.
6 I’m a course in photography at the moment. It’s very good.
7 The last time I an exam was ten years ago.
8 When you’ve finished Exercise 1, you can Exercise 2.
9 There’s something wrong with the car. The engine is a strange noise.
10 It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I’ve ever .
11 Let’s a list of all the things we have to today.
have

A  
**have** and **have got** (⇒ Unit 9)

I’ve **got** (something) or I **have** (something) = it is mine:
- I’ve **got** a new car. or I **have** a new car.
- Sue has **got** long hair. or Sue has **has** long hair.
- **Have** they got any children? or **Do** they **have** any children?
- Tim hasn’t **got** a job. or Tim doesn’t **have** a job.
- How much time **have** you **got**? or How much time **do** you **have**?

**also**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I’ve got</th>
<th>I have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a headache / (a) toothache / a stomach ache / a pain (in my leg etc.)</td>
<td>a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a temperature / flu etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I’ve **got** a headache. or I **have** a headache.
- **Have** you got a cold? or **Do** you **have** a cold?

The past is: I **had** (without ‘got’) / I didn’t have / Did you have? etc.:
- When I first met Sue, she had short hair.
- He didn’t have any money because he didn’t have a job.
- How much time **did** you **have**?

B  
**have breakfast** / **have a shower** etc.

In these expressions **have** = eat/drink/take etc. You *cannot* use ‘have got’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>breakfast / lunch / dinner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a meal / a sandwich / a pizza etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a cup of coffee / a glass of milk etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>something to eat/drink</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- ‘Where’s Ann?’ ‘She’s **having** lunch.’
- I **don’t** usually have breakfast.
- I **had** three cups of coffee this morning.
- ‘Have’ a biscuit!’ ‘Oh, thank you.’

We also use **have** (not ‘have got’) in these expressions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a bath / a shower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a rest / a holiday / a party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a nice time / a good journey etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a walk / a swim / a game (of tennis etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a dream / an accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a baby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a look (at …)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I **had** a shower this morning.
- We’re **having** a party next week. You must come.
- Enjoy your holiday. **Have** a nice time!
- Did you **have** a good time in London?
- Sandra has just **had** a baby.
- Can I **have** a look at your newspaper?

C  
Compare I’ve **got** and I **have**:
- I’ve **got** / I **have** a new shower. It’s very good.  
  *You can use I’ve **got** or I **have** in this sentence.*
- I **have** a shower every morning. (not ‘I’ve **got**’)
- A: Where’s Paul?
  B: He’s **having** a shower. (= he’s washing now)
EXERCISES

57.1 Put in the correct form of have or have got.

1 I ____________________________ time to do the shopping yesterday.
   (I / not / have)

2 Has Lisa got (OR Does Lisa have)________________________ a car? ‘No, she can’t drive.’
   (Lisa / have?)

3 He can’t open the door. ____________________________ a key.
   (he / not / have)

4 ____________________________ a cold last week. He’s better now.
   (you / have?)

5 What’s wrong? ____________________________ a headache?
   (George / have)

6 We wanted to go by taxi but we ____________________________ enough money.
   (we / not / have)

7 Liz is very busy. ____________________________ much free time.
   (she / not / have)

8 ____________________________ any problems when you were on holiday?

57.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list:

- a rest
- a cup of tea
- a bath
- breakfast
- dinner
- a nice time

1 They ____________________________________________ breakfast.

2 She ____________________________________________

3 He ____________________________________________

4 They ____________________________________________

5 ____________________________________________

6 ____________________________________________

57.3 What do you say in these situations?

1 Ann is going on holiday. What do you say to her before she goes?
   Have a nice holiday!

2 You meet Claire at the airport. She has just got off her plane. Ask her about the flight.
   Did you have a good flight?

3 Tom is going on a long journey. What do you say to him before he leaves?

4 It’s Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.

5 Paul has just come home after playing tennis with a friend. Ask him about the game.

6 Rachel is going out for a meal tonight. What do you say to her before she goes?

57.4 Complete the sentences. Use have/had and choose from the list.

- an accident
- a glass of water
- a look
- a walk
- a party
- something to eat

1 We ____________________________ a few weeks ago. We invited fifty people.

2 ‘Shall we ____________________________ ?’ ‘No, I’m not hungry.’

3 I was thirsty, so I ____________________________ before breakfast.

4 I like to get up early and ____________________________ before breakfast.

5 Tina is a very good driver. She has never ____________________________

6 There’s something wrong with the engine of my car. Can you ____________________________ at it?
I/me  he/him  they/them etc.

A

People

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

subject | Ann knows I.  I know Ann. | Ann knows me.  me |

object | Ann knows we.  We know Ann. | me |

I know Ann.  Ann knows me.

We know Ann.  Ann knows us.


She knows Ann.  Ann knows her.

They know Ann.  Ann knows them.

B

Things

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>it</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• I don't want this book. You can have it.
• I don't want these books. You can have them.
• Diane never drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
• I never go to parties. I don't like them.

C

We use me/her/them etc. (object) after a preposition (for/to/with etc.):

• This letter isn’t for me. It’s for you.
• Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
• We’re going to the cinema. Do you want to come with us?
• Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with them?
• ‘Where’s the newspaper?’ ‘You’re sitting on it.’

give it/them to ...:
• I want that book. Please give it to me.
• Robert wants these books. Can you give them to him, please?
EXERCISES

58.1 Finish the sentences with him/her/them.

1. I don’t know those girls. Do you know them?
2. I don’t know that man. Do you know him?
3. I don’t know those people. Do you know them?
4. I don’t know David’s wife. Do you know her?
5. I don’t know Mr Stevens. Do you know him?
6. I don’t know Sarah’s parents. Do you know them?
7. I don’t know the woman with the black coat. Do you know her?

58.2 Complete the sentences. Use I/me/you/she/her etc.

1. I want to see her but she doesn’t want to see me.
2. They want to see me but don’t want to see...
3. She wants to see him but doesn’t want to see...
4. We want to see them but don’t want to see...
5. He wants to see us but doesn’t want to see...
6. They want to see her but doesn’t want to see...
7. I want to see them but don’t want to see...
8. You want to see her but doesn’t want to see...

58.3 Write sentences beginning I like ..., I don’t like ... or Do you like ... ?

1. I don’t eat tomatoes. I don’t like them.
2. George is a very nice man. I like George.
3. This jacket isn’t very nice. I don’t like this jacket.
4. This is my new car. Do you like this car?
5. Mrs Clark is not very friendly. I don’t like Mrs Clark.
6. These are my new shoes. Do you like these shoes?

58.4 Complete the sentences. Use I/me/he/him etc.

1. Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
2. ‘Do you know that man?’ ‘Yes, I work with him.’
3. Where are the tickets? I can’t find them.
4. I can’t find my keys. Where are they?
5. We’re going out. You can come with me.
6. Margaret likes music. She plays the piano.
7. I don’t like dogs. I’m afraid of them.
8. I’m talking to you. Please listen to me.
9. Where is Ann? I want to talk to her.
10. My brother has a new job. He doesn’t like it very much.

58.5 Complete the sentences.

1. I want that book. Can you give it to me?
2. He wants the key. Can you give it to him?
3. She wants the keys. Can you give them to her?
4. I want that letter. Can you give it to me?
5. They want the money. Can you give it to them?
6. We want the photographs. Can you give them to us?
We use **my/your/his etc.** + a noun:

- **my** hands
- **his** mother
- **her** new car
- **our** house
- **your** best friend
- **their** room

**A**

- my hat
- our hats
- your hat
- his hat
- her hat
- their hats

**B**

- I → my
  - I like **my** job.
- we → our
  - We like **our** jobs.
- you → your
  - You like **your** job.
- he → his
  - He likes **his** job.
- she → her
  - She likes **her** job.
- they → their
  - They like **their** jobs.
- it → its
  - Oxford (= it) is famous for **its** university.

**C**

- **its** and **it's**
  - Oxford is famous for **its** university.
- **it's** (= **it is**)
  - I like Oxford. **It's** a nice city. (= **It is** a nice city.)
EXERCISES

59.1 Finish these sentences.

1. I’m going to wash my hands.
2. She’s going to wash.
3. We’re going to wash.
4. He’s going to wash.
5. They’re going to wash.
6. Are you going to wash?

59.2 Finish these sentences.

1. He lives with his parents.
2. They live with their parents.
3. We live with their parents.
4. Julia lives with her parents.
5. I live with my parents.
6. John lives with his parents.
7. Do you live with your parents?
8. Most children live with their parents.

59.3 Look at the family tree and complete the sentences with his/her/their.

1. I saw Liz with her husband, Philip.
2. I saw Ann and Ted with their children.
3. I saw Ted with his wife, Ann.
4. I saw George with his brother, Bill.
5. I saw Ann with her brother, Bill.
6. I saw Liz and Philip with their son, Bill.
8. I saw Diana and Robert with their parents.

59.4 Put in my/our/your/his/her/their/its.

1. Do you like your job?
2. I know Mr Watson but I don’t know his wife.
3. Mr and Mrs Baker live in London. Their son lives in Australia.
4. We’re going to have a party. We’re going to invite all our friends.
5. Ann is going out with her friends this evening.
6. I like tennis. It’s his favourite sport.
7. ‘Is that your car?’ ‘No, I haven’t got a car.’
8. I want to phone Ann. Do you know her phone number?
9. Do you think most people are happy in their jobs?
10. I’m going to wash my hair before I go out.
11. This is a beautiful tree. Its leaves are a beautiful colour.
12. John has a brother and a sister. His brother is 25 and his sister is 21.

59.5 Complete the sentences. Use my/his/her/their etc. with one of these words:

coat  homework  house  husband  job  key  name

1. Jim doesn’t enjoy his job. It’s not very interesting.
2. I can’t open the door. I haven’t got the key.
3. Sally is married. She works in a bank.
4. It’s very cold today. Put on your coat when you go out.
5. ‘What are the children doing?’ ‘They’re playing.’
6. ‘Do you know that man?’ ‘Yes, but I don’t know his name.’
7. We live in Barton Street. Our house is at the end on the left.
Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.

A

I → my → mine
we → our → ours
you → your → yours
he → his → his
she → her → hers
they → their → theirs

It's my money. It's mine.
It's our money. It's ours.
It's your money. It's yours.
It's his money. It's his.
It's her money. It's hers.
It's their money. It's theirs.

B

We use my/your etc. + a noun (my hands / your book etc.):
• My hands are cold.
• Is this your book?
• Ann gave me her umbrella.
• It's their problem, not our problem.

We use mine/yours etc. without a noun:
• Is this book mine or yours? (= my book or your book)
• I didn’t have an umbrella, so Ann gave me hers. (= her umbrella)
• It's their problem, not ours. (= not our problem)
• We went in our car and they went in theirs. (= their car)

You can use his with or without a noun:
• ‘Is this his camera or hers?’ ‘It’s his.’

C

a friend of mine / a friend of his / some friends of yours etc.
• I went out to meet a friend of mine. (not ‘a friend of me’)
• Tom was with a friend of his. (not ‘a friend of him’)
• Are those people friends of yours? (not ‘friends of you’)

D

Whose ... ?

You can use whose with or without a noun:
• Whose money is this? It’s mine.
• Whose is this?
• Whose shoes are these? They’re John’s.
• Whose are these?
EXERCISES

60.1 Finish the sentences with mine/yours etc.
1. It's your money. It's yours.
2. It's my bag. It's yours.
3. It's our car. It's yours.
4. They're her shoes. They're yours.
5. It's their house. It's theirs.
6. They're your books. They're yours.
7. They're my glasses. They're yours.
8. It's his coat. It's his.

60.2 Choose the right word.
1. It's their/their problem, not ear/ours. their and ours are right
2. This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
3. That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
4. Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
5. Catherine is going out with her/hers friends this evening.
6. My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
7. They've got two children but I don't know their/theirs names.
8. Can we use your washing machine? Our/Ours is broken.

60.3 Finish these sentences. Use friend(s) of mine/yours etc.
1. I went to the cinema with a friend(s) of mine.
2. They went on holiday with some friend(s) of theirs.
3. She's going out with a friend.
4. We had dinner with some friend(s).
5. I played tennis with a friend(s).
6. Tom is going to meet a friend(s).
7. Do you know those people? Are they friend(s) of yours?

60.4 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?

1. Whose car is this? It's theirs.
2. Is this? It's.
3. These? They are.
4. ?
5. ?
6. ?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I etc.</th>
<th>me etc.</th>
<th>my etc.</th>
<th>mine etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows me.</td>
<td>It's my car.</td>
<td>It's mine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows us.</td>
<td>It's our car.</td>
<td>It's ours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows you.</td>
<td>It's your car.</td>
<td>It's yours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He knows Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows him.</td>
<td>It's his car.</td>
<td>It's his.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She knows Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows her.</td>
<td>It's her car.</td>
<td>It's hers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows them.</td>
<td>It's their car.</td>
<td>It's theirs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I know him but I can't remember his name.'
- She was very pleased because we invited her to stay with us at our house.
- A: Where are the children? Have you seen them?
  B: Yes, they are playing with their friends in the park.
- That's my pen. Can you give it to me, please?
- 'Is this your umbrella?' 'No, it's yours.'
- He didn't have an umbrella, so she gave him hers. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- I'm meeting a friend of mine this evening. (not 'a friend of me')
EXERCISES

61.1 Answer the questions in the same way.

1. Do you know that man? Yes, I know him but I can’t remember his name.
2. Do you know that woman? Yes, I know her but I can’t remember her name.
3. Do you know those people? Yes, I know them but I can’t remember their names.

61.2 Finish these sentences in the same way.

1. We invited her to stay with us at our house.
2. He invited us to stay with their house.
3. They invited me to stay with her house.
4. I invited them to stay with your house.
5. She invited us to stay with his house.
6. Did you invite him to stay with your house?

61.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. I gave him my address and he gave me his.
2. I gave her her address and she gave me yours.
3. He gave me your address and I gave her his.
4. We gave them your address and they gave us his.
5. She gave him her address and he gave me yours.
6. You gave us your address and they gave her his.
7. They gave you your address and he gave me his.

61.4 Put in him/her/yours etc.

1. Where’s Ann? Have you seen her?
2. Where are my keys? Where did I put yours?
3. This letter is for Bill. Can you give it to him?
4. We wrote to John but he didn’t answer your letter.
5. ‘I can’t find my pen. Can I use yours?’ ‘Yes, of course.’
6. We’re going to the cinema. Why don’t you come with yours?
7. Did your sister pass her exams?
8. Some people talk about their jobs all the time.
9. Last night I went out for a meal with a friend of yours.
myself/yourself/themselves etc.

A

He’s looking at himself.
Help yourself!
They’re enjoying themselves.

I → me → myself
he → him → himself
she → her → herself
you → you → yourselves
we → us → ourselves
they → them → themselves

• I looked at myself in the mirror.
• He cut himself with a knife.
• She fell off her bike but she didn’t hurt herself.
• Please help yourself, (one person)
• Please help yourselves. (two or more people)
• We had a good holiday. We enjoyed ourselves.
• They had a nice time. They enjoyed themselves.

B

Compare:
me/him/them etc.

She is looking at him — different people
• You never talk to me.
• I didn’t pay for them.
• Did I hurt you?

myself/himself/themselves etc.

He is looking at himself — the same person
• Sometimes I talk to myself.
• They paid for themselves.
• Be careful. Don’t hurt yourself.

C

by myself / by yourself etc. = alone:
• I went on holiday by myself. (= I went alone)
• ‘Was she with friends?’ ‘No, she was by herself’

D

each other
• Jill and Ann are good friends. They know each other well.
  (= Jill knows Ann / Ann knows Jill)
• Paul and I live near each other. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare each other and -selves:

Steve and Sue looked at each other.
(= he looked at her / she looked at him)

Steve and Sue looked at themselves.
(= he looked at himself / she looked at herself)


**EXERCISES**

**62.1** Finish the sentences with *myself/yourselves* etc.

1. He looked at **himself** in the mirror.
2. I’m not angry with you. I’m angry with ........................................
3. Margaret had a nice time in London. She enjoyed ........................................
4. My friends had a nice time in London. They enjoyed ........................................
5. I picked up a very hot plate and burnt ........................................
6. He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about ........................................
7. I want to know more about you. Tell me about ........................................ *(one person)*
8. Goodbye! Have a nice holiday and look after ........................................ *(two people)*

**62.2** Write sentences with *by myself / by yourself* etc.

1. I went on holiday alone. ........................................
2. When I saw him, he was alone. ........................................
3. Don’t go out alone. ........................................
4. I went to the cinema alone. ........................................
5. My sister lives alone. ........................................
6. Many people live alone. ........................................

**62.3** Write sentences with *each other*.

1. They like each other. ........................................
2. They can’t ........................................
3. They ........................................
4. I don’t know him. ........................................
5. I’m sitting next to him. ........................................
6. I gave her a present. ........................................

**62.4** Complete the sentences. Use: *each other* or *ourselves/yourselves/themselves* or *us/you/them*.

1. Paul and I live near ........................................
2. Who are those people? Do you know ........................................
3. You can help Tom and Tom can help ........................................
4. There’s food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help ........................................
5. We didn’t go to Ann’s party. She didn’t invite ........................................
6. When we go on holiday, we always enjoy ........................................
7. Mary and Jane were at school together but they never see ........................................ now.
8. Diane and I are very good friends. We’ve known ........................................ for a long time.
9. ‘Did you see David and Diane at the party?’ ‘Yes, but I didn’t speak to ........................................’
10. Many people talk to ........................................ when they’re alone.
's (Ann's camera / my brother's car etc.)

We normally use 's for people:

- I stayed at my sister's house. (not 'the house of my sister')
- Have you met Mr Kelly's wife? (not 'the wife of Mr Kelly')
- Are you going to James's party?
- Paul is a man's name. Paula is a woman's name.

You can use 's without a noun after it:

- Mary's hair is longer than Ann's. (= Ann's hair)
- 'Whose umbrella is this?' 'It's my mother's.' (= my mother's umbrella)
- 'Where were you last night?' 'I was at Paul's.' (= Paul's house)

friend's and friends'

my friend's house = one friend
(= his house or her house)

We write 's after
friend/student/mother etc. (singular):
  my mother's car (one mother)
  my father's car (one father)

my friends' house = two or more friends
(= their house)

We write 's after
friends/students/parents etc. (plural):
  my parents' car (two parents)

We use of ... for things, places etc.:

- Look at the roof of that building. (not 'that building's roof')
- We didn't see the beginning of the film. (not 'the film's beginning')
- What's the name of this village?
- Do you know the cause of the problem?
- You can sit in the back of the car.
- Madrid is the capital of Spain.
EXERCISES

63.1 Look at the family tree. Write sentences about the people in the family.

Mary and Brian are married. They have a son, James, and a daughter, Julia.
Julia is married to Paul. Julia and Paul have a son, Daniel.

1 (Brian/husband) Brian is Mary’s husband.
2 (Julia/mother) Julia is Daniel’s mother.
3 (Mary/wife) Mary is __________ wife.
4 (James/brother) James __________
5 (James/uncle) __________ uncle.
6 (Julia/wife) Julia __________
7 (Mary/grandmother) __________
8 (Julia/sister) __________
9 (Paul/husband) __________
10 (Paul/father) __________
11 (Daniel/nephew) __________

63.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use one word only.

1 Whose is this? Alice’s
2 Whose is this?
3 And this?
4 And these?
5 And this?
6 And these?

63.3 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 I stayed at the house of my sister. 
   my sister’s house
   OK
2 What is the name of this village?
3 Do you like the colour of this coat?
4 Do you know the phone number of Bill?
5 The job of my brother is very interesting.
6 Write your name at the top of the page.
7 For me the morning is the best part of the day.
8 The favourite colour of Paula is blue.
9 When is the birthday of your mother?
10 The house of my parents isn’t very big.
11 The walls of this house are very thin.
12 The car stopped at the end of the street.
13 Are you going to the party of Silvia next week?
14 The manager of the hotel is on holiday at the moment.
a/an ...

B

- Do you want an apple or a banana?
- I'm going to buy a hat and an umbrella.
- There was an interesting programme on TV last night.

C

- The sun is a star.
- Football is a game.
- Dallas is a city in Texas.
- A mouse is an animal. It's a small animal.
- Joe is a very nice person.

We use a/an ... when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:

We use a/an ... for jobs etc.:
- A: What's your job?
  B: I'm a dentist. (not 'I'm dentist.')
- 'What does Mark do?' 'He's an engineer.'
- Would you like to be a teacher?
- Beethoven was a composer.
- Picasso was a famous painter.
- Are you a student?
64.1 Write a or an.
1 an old book 4 an airport 7 a university
2 a window 5 a new airport 8 an hour
3 an horse 6 an organisation 9 an economic problem

64.2 What are these things? Choose from the list.

| bird | fruit | mountain | river | musical instrument
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flower</td>
<td>game</td>
<td>planet</td>
<td>tool</td>
<td>vegetable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 A duck is a bird.
2 A carrot is a vegetable.
3 Tennis is a game.
4 A hammer is an instrument.
5 Everest is a mountain.

64.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the list and finish the sentences.

dentist electrician nurse photographer private detective shop assistant taxi driver

1 She's a dentist.
2 He's a nurse.
3 She's a photographer.
4 She's a private detective.
5 He's a shop assistant.
6 She's a taxi driver.

64.4 Make sentences. Choose from Box A and Box B. Use a/an where necessary.

A I want to ask you a question.
Tom never wears a hat.
I can’t ride a bicycle.
My brother is an artist.
Barbara works in an old house.
Ann wants to learn a foreign language.
Jim lives in a bookshop.
This evening I’m going to attend a party.

B old house artist
party question
bookshop foreign language
hat bicycle
The plural of a noun is usually -s:

- singular (one) → plural (two or more)
  - a flower → some flowers
  - a week → two weeks
  - a nice place → many nice places
  - this shop → these shops

Spelling (⇒ Appendix 5):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-s / -sh</td>
<td>buses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ch / -x</td>
<td>dishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y</td>
<td>-ies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus</td>
<td>buses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>church</td>
<td>churches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box</td>
<td>boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potato</td>
<td>potatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomato</td>
<td>tomatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baby</td>
<td>babies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>party</td>
<td>parties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dictionary</td>
<td>dictionaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monkey</td>
<td>monkeys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boy</td>
<td>boys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shelf</td>
<td>shelves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knife</td>
<td>knives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife</td>
<td>wives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These things are plural in English:

- scissors
- glasses
- trousers
- jeans
- shorts
- tights
- pyjamas

- Do you wear glasses?
- Where are the scissors? I need them.

You can also say a pair of scissors / a pair of trousers / a pair of pyjamas etc.:
- I need a new pair of jeans. Or I need some new jeans. (not ‘a new jeans’)

Some plurals do not end in -s:

- this man → these men
- a woman → some women
- a child → many children

- one foot → two feet
- a tooth → all my teeth
- a fish → a lot of fish
- that sheep → those sheep
- a mouse → some mice

- also: a person → two people / some people / a lot of people etc.
- She’s a nice person.
- but They are nice people. (not ‘nice persons’)

People is plural (= they), so we say people are / people have etc.:
- A lot of people speak English. (not ‘speaks’)
- I like the people here. They are very friendly.

Police is plural:
- ‘The police are here.’  ‘Why? What do they want?’
EXERCISES

65.1 Write the plural.

1. flower  \textbf{flowers}  
2. boat  
3. woman  
4. city  
5. umbrella  
6. address  
7. knife  
8. sandwich  
9. family  
10. foot  
11. holiday  
12. potato

65.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. There are a lot of  \textbf{sheep}  in the field.  
2. George is cleaning his  
3. There are three  at the bus stop.  
4. Jill has got two  
5. There are a lot of  in the river.  
6. The  are falling from the tree.

65.3 Some of these sentences are right but most are wrong. Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. I’m going to buy some flowers. \textbf{OK}  
2. I need a new pair of jeans. \textbf{OR}  I need some new jeans.  
3. It’s a lovely park with a lot of beautiful trees.  
4. There was a woman in the car with two men.  
5. Sheep eat grass.  
6. David is married and has three children.  
7. Most of my friends are students.  
8. He put on his pyjama and went to bed.  
9. We went fishing but we didn’t catch many fish.  
10. Do you know many persons in this town?  
11. I like your trousers. Where did you get it?  
12. The town centre is usually full of tourists.  
13. I don’t like mice. I’m afraid of them.  
14. This scissor isn’t very sharp.

65.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

1. It’s a nice place. Many people \textbf{go} to there for a holiday.  
2. Some people \textbf{are} always late.  
3. The president is not popular. The people \textbf{like} him.  
4. A lot of people \textbf{watch} television every day.  
5. Three people \textbf{were} injured in the accident.  
6. How many people \textbf{live} in that house?  
7. \textbf{Do} the police carry guns in your country?  
8. The police are \textbf{looking} for the stolen car.  
9. I need my glasses but I can’t 
10. I’m going to buy \textbf{some} new jeans today.
A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*.

**A  Countable nouns**

For example: (a) **car**  (a) **man**  (a) **key**  (a) **house**  (a) **flower**  (an) **idea**  (an) **accident**

You can use **one/two/three** (etc.) + countable nouns (you can count them):

`one car  two cars  three men  four houses`

Countable nouns can be **singular** (= one) or **plural** (= two or more):  

- **singular:** a car  my car  the car  etc.
- **plural:** cars  two cars  the cars  some cars  many cars  etc.

- I’ve got a car.
- There aren’t many cars in the car park.
- New cars are very expensive.

You **cannot** use the singular (car/house/key etc.) alone. You need a/an (⇒ Unit 64):

- We can’t get in without a key. *(not ‘without key’)*

**B  Uncountable nouns**

For example: **water**  **air**  **rice**  **salt**  **plastic**  **money**  **music**  **tennis**

`water  salt  money  music`

You **cannot** say one/two/three (etc.) + these things: **one water  two musics**

Uncountable nouns have only **one** form:  

- money  the money  my money  some money  much money  etc.

- I’ve got some money.
- There isn’t much money in the box.
- Money isn’t everything.

You **cannot** use a/an + uncountable nouns: ❌ **money  music**

But you can say **a piece of ... / a glass of ... etc. + uncountable noun:**

- a glass of water  a can of oil  a bar of chocolate
- a piece of cheese  a bottle of milk  a piece of music
- a bowl of rice  a cup of coffee  a game of tennis
66.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write a/an if necessary.
The names of these things are:

bucket, envelope, milk, salt, spoon, toothbrush, wallet

66.2 Some of these sentences are right, but some of them need a/an. Put in a/an where necessary.

1. I haven't got a watch.
2. Do you like cheese? OK
4. Are you looking for job?
5. Mary doesn't eat meat.
6. Mary eats apple every day.
7. I'm going to party tonight.
8. Music is wonderful thing.
9. Jamaica is island.
10. I don't need key.
11. Everybody needs food.
12. I've got good idea.
13. Can you drive car?
14. Do you want cup of coffee?
15. I don't like coffee without milk.
16. Don't go out without umbrella.

66.3 What are the things in the pictures? Write a ... of ... for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.

1. a bottle of milk
2.
3.
4. a piece of chocolate
5.
6.
7. a bowl of soup
8.
9.

bar, cup, loaf, bread, bottle, glass, piece, bowl, jar, piece

bread, milk, tea, chocolate, paper, water, honey, soup, wood
a car / some money
(countable/uncountable 2)

A

a/an and some

a/an + singular countable noun (car/apple/shoe etc.):
- I need a new car.
- Would you like an apple?

some + plural countable nouns (cars/apples/shoes etc.):
- I need some new shoes.
- Would you like some apples?

some + uncountable nouns (water/money/music etc.):
- I need some money.
- Would you like some cheese?
- (or Would you like a piece of cheese?)

Compare a and some:
- Linda bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.
- I read a newspaper, wrote some letters and listened to some music.

B

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:

Compare a paper (= a newspaper) and some paper:
- I want something to read. I'm going to buy a paper.
- but I want to make a list. I need some paper / a piece of paper. (not 'a paper')

C

Be careful with these nouns – they are usually uncountable:
information advice weather news bread hair furniture work
- I need some information about hotels in London. (not 'informations')
- It's nice weather today. (not 'a nice weather')
- Listen! I've just had some good news. (not 'a good news')
- I'm going to buy some bread. (not 'a bread')
- Sue has got very long hair. (not 'hairs')
- They've got some very nice furniture in their house. (not 'furnitures')
- 'Do you like your job?' 'Yes, but it's hard work.' (not 'a hard work')

We say a job (but not 'a work'):
- I've got a new job. (not 'a new work')
67.1 What did you buy? Use the pictures to make sentences (I bought ...).

1. I bought some perfume, a hat and some shoes.
2. I bought ..........................................
3. ......................................................
4. ......................................................

67.2 Write sentences with Would you like a ...? or Would you like some ...?

1. Would you like some cheese?
2. Would you like .................................? 4. ......................................................?
3. Would .................................................? 5. ......................................................?
6. ......................................................?

67.3 Put in a/an or some.

1. I read a... book and listened to some music.
2. I need .......... money. I want to buy .......... food.
3. We met ........... interesting people at the party.
4. I’m going to open .......... window to get .......... fresh air.
5. She didn’t eat much for lunch – only .......... apple and .......... bread.
7. I’m going to make a table. First I need .......... wood.
8. Listen to me carefully. I’m going to give you .......... advice.

67.4 Which is right?

1. I’m going to buy some new shoe/shoes.  shoes is right
2. Martin has got brown eye/eyes.
3. Paula has got short black hair/hairs.
4. The tourist guide gave us some information/informations about the town.
5. We’re going to buy some new chair/chairs.
6. We’re going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.
7. It’s difficult to get a work/job at the moment.
8. We had lovely weather / a lovely weather when we were on holiday.
UNIT 64 68  a/an and the

A a/an

There are three windows here.
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3

- I've got a car.
  (there are many cars and I've got one)
- Can I ask a question?
  (there are many questions – can I ask one?)
- Is there a hotel near here? (there are many hotels – is there one near here?)
- Paris is an interesting city. (there are many interesting cities and Paris is one)
- Lisa is a student.
  (there are many students and Lisa is one)

- I'm going to clean the car tomorrow.
  (= my car)
- Can you repeat the question, please?
  (= the question that you asked)
- We enjoyed our holiday. The hotel was very nice. (= our hotel)
- Paris is the capital of France.
  (there is only one capital of France)
- Lisa is the youngest student in her class.
  (there is only one youngest student in her class)

Compare a and the:

- I bought a jacket and a shirt. The jacket was cheap but the shirt was expensive.
  (= the jacket and the shirt that I bought)

B We say the ... when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:

- the door / the ceiling / the floor / the carpet / the light etc. (of a room)
- the roof / the garden / the kitchen / the bathroom etc. (of a house)
- the centre / the station / the airport / the town hall etc. (of a town)

- 'Where's Tom?' 'In the kitchen.'
  (= the kitchen in this house or flat)
- Turn off the light and close the door.
  (= the light and the door of the room)
- Do you live far from the centre?
  (= the centre of your town)
- I'd like to speak to the manager, please.
  (= the manager of this shop etc.)
EXERCISES

68.1 Put in a/an or the.

1. We enjoyed our holiday. The hotel was very nice.
2. ‘Can I ask a question?’ ‘Of course. What do you want to ask?’
3. You look very tired. You need a holiday.
4. ‘Where’s Tom?’ ‘He’s in the bathroom.’
5. Jane is an interesting person. You must meet her.
6. A: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to the city centre?
   B: Yes, go straight on and then take the next turning left.
7. A: Shall we go out for a meal this evening?
   B: Yes, that’s a good idea.
8. It’s a nice morning. Let’s go for a walk.
9. Amanda is a student. When she finishes her studies, she wants to be a journalist.
   She lives with two friends in a flat near her college where she is studying.
   The flat is small but she likes it.
10. Peter and Mary have got two children, a boy and a girl. The boy is seven years old and the girl is three.
    Peter works in a factory. Mary hasn’t got a job at the moment.

68.2 Complete the sentences. Use a or the + one of these words:
airport cup door floor picture radio

1. Can you open the door, please?
2. Can I have a cup of coffee, please?
3. How far is it to the airport?
4. That’s a nice picture — I like it.
5. Can you turn off the radio, please?
6. Why are you sitting on the floor?

68.3 Put in a/an or the where necessary.

1. Don’t forget to turn off the light when you go out.
2. Enjoy your holiday and don’t forget to send me postcard.
3. What is name of this village?
4. Canada is very big country.
5. What is largest city in Canada?
6. I like this room but I don’t like colour of carpet.
7. ‘Are you OK?’ ‘No, I’ve got headache.’
8. We live in old house near station.
9. What is name of director of film we saw last night?
We use the when it is clear which thing or person we mean:

- What is the name of this street? (this street has only one name)
- Who is the best player in your team?
- Can you tell me the time, please? (= the time now)
- My office is on the first floor. (= the first floor of the building)

Don’t forget the:
- Do you live near the city centre? (not ‘near city centre’)
- Excuse me, where is the nearest bank? (not ‘where is nearest …’)

We say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the sea / the country:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The sky is blue and the sun is shining.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you live in a town or in the country?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the police / the fire brigade / the army (of a city, country etc.):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My brother is a soldier. He’s in the army.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the top / the end / the middle / the left etc.:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Write your name at the top of the page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My house is at the end of this street.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The table is in the middle of the room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you drive on the right or on the left in your country?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Play) the piano / the guitar / the trumpet etc. (musical instruments):
- Paula is learning to play the piano.

the radio:
- I listen to the radio a lot.

We do not use the with:

- television: I watch television a lot. What’s on television tonight?  
- breakfast / lunch / dinner: What did you have for breakfast? (not ‘the breakfast’) 
- next / last + week/month/year/summer/Monday etc.: I’m not working next week. (not ‘the next week’) 
- Dinner is ready!

- Did you have a holiday last summer? (not ‘the last summer’)
EXERCISES

69.1 Put in the where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is already correct.

1. What is (name) of this street? the name.
2. What’s on television tonight? OK
3. Our apartment is on second floor.
4. Would you like to go to moon?
5. Which is best hotel in this town?
6. What time is lunch?
7. How far is it to city centre?
8. We’re going away at end of May.
9. What are you doing next weekend?
10. I didn’t like her first time I met her.
11. I’m going out after dinner.
12. What’s biggest city in world?
13. My sister got married last month.
14. My dictionary is on top shelf on right.
15. We live in country about five miles from nearest village.

69.2 Complete the sentences. Use: the same + age colour problem street time.

1. I live in North Street and you live in North Street. We live in the same street.
2. I arrived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at.
3. Jim is 25 and Sue is 25. Jim and Sue are.
4. My shirt is dark blue and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are.
5. I’ve got no money and you’ve got no money. We’ve got.

69.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the if necessary.

1. The sun is shining.
2. She’s playing
3. They’re having
4. He’s listening to
5. They’re watching
6. They’re swimming in

69.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.

capital dinner police lunch middle name sky television

1. We had dinner at a restaurant last night.
2. We stayed at a very nice hotel but I don’t remember.
3. is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
4. Did you see the film on last night?
5. Somebody was trying to break into the shop so I called.
6. Tokyo is of Japan.
7. ‘What did you have for?’ ‘A salad.’
8. I woke up in of the night.
go to work  go home  go to the cinema

A

She's at work.  They're going to school.  He's in bed.

We say:

(go) to work, (be) at work, start work, finish work:
- Goodbye! I'm going to work now. (not 'to the work')
- I finish work at 5 o'clock every day.

(go) to school, (be) at school, start school, leave school etc.:
- What did you learn at school today? (not 'at the school')
- Some children don't like school.

(go) to university/college, (be) at university/college:
- Helen wants to go to university when she leaves school.
- What did you study at college?

(go) to hospital, (be) in hospital:
- Jack was in an accident. He had to go to hospital.

(go) to prison, (be) in prison:
- Why is he in prison? What did he do?

(go) to church, (be) in/at church:
- David usually goes to church on Sundays.

(go) to bed, (be) in bed:
- I'm tired. I'm going to bed. (not 'to the bed')
- 'Where's Jill?' 'She's in bed.'

(go) home, (be) at home etc.:
- I'm tired. I'm going home. (not 'to home')
- Are you going out tonight or are you staying at home?

B

We say:

(go to) the cinema / the theatre / the bank / the post office:
- I never go to the theatre but I often go to the cinema.
- 'Are you going to the bank?' 'No, the post office.'

(go to) the doctor, the dentist:
- You're not well. Why don't you go to the doctor?
- I'm going to the dentist tomorrow.

also the station / the airport / the city centre (⇒ Unit 68)
EXERCISES

70.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

1. He’s in [bed].
2. They’re at [bed].
3. She’s in [church].
4. She’s at [school].
5. They’re at [school].
6. He’s in [bed].

70.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.

- bank
- bed
- church
- home
- post office
- school
- station

1. I need some money. I must go to the bank.
2. David usually goes to church on Sundays.
3. In Britain, children go to school from the age of five.
4. There were a lot of people at the post office waiting for the train.
5. I phoned you last night but you weren’t at the station.
6. I’m going to bed now. Goodnight!
7. I’m going to the post office to get some stamps.

70.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

1. If you want to catch a plane, you go to the airport.
2. If you want to see a film, you go to the cinema.
3. If you are tired and you want to sleep, you go to bed.
4. If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you go to jail.
5. If you have a problem with your teeth, you go to the dentist.
6. If you want to study after you leave school, you go to university.
7. If you are injured in an accident, you go to the hospital.

70.4 Put in the where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is complete.

1. We went [to cinema] last night.
2. I finish work at 5 o’clock every day. OK
3. Mary wasn’t feeling well yesterday, so she went to the doctor.
4. I wasn’t feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed.
5. Why is Angela always late for work?
6. ‘Where are the children?’ ‘They’re at school.’
7. We’ve got no money in the bank.
8. When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday.
9. What time do you usually get home from work?
10. Do you live far from the city centre?
11. ‘Where shall we meet?’ ‘At the station.’
12. Jim is ill. He’s in hospital.
13. Margaret takes her children to school every day.
14. Would you like to go to university?
15. Would you like to go to the theatre this evening?
I like music I hate exams

Do not use the for general ideas:
- I like music, especially classical music.
  (not 'the music ... the classical music')
- We don't eat meat very often. (not 'the meat')
- Life is not possible without water. (not 'The life ... the water')
- I hate exams. (not 'the exams')
- Do you know a shop that sells foreign newspapers?
- I'm not very good at writing letters.

Do not use the for games and sports:
- My favourite sports are tennis and skiing. (not 'the tennis ... the skiing')

Do not use the for languages or academic subjects (history/geography/physics/biology etc.):
- Do you think English is difficult? (not 'the English')
- Tom's brother is studying physics and chemistry.

flowers or the flowers?

Compare:

- Flowers are beautiful.
  (= flowers in general)

- I don't like cold weather.
  (= cold weather in general)

- We don't eat fish very often.
  (= fish in general)

- Are you interested in history?
  (= history in general)

- This is a lovely garden.
  The flowers are beautiful.
  (= the flowers in this garden)

- The weather isn't very good today.
  (= the weather today)

- We had a very nice meal last night. The fish was very good.
  (= the fish we ate last night)

- Are you interested in the history of your country?
**EXERCISES**

**71.1** What do you think about these things?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>dogs</th>
<th>big cities</th>
<th>motor racing</th>
<th>TV quiz shows</th>
<th>exams</th>
<th>parties</th>
<th>loud music</th>
<th>hard work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose seven of these things and write sentences beginning:

I like ... I don’t like ... I love ... I hate ... I don’t mind ... (= it’s OK)

1. I hate exams.
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 
7. 
8. 

**71.2** Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I’m (very) interested in ... I know a lot about ... I don’t know much about ...
I’m not interested in ... I know a little about ... I don’t know anything about ...

1. (history) I’m very interested in history.
2. (politics) 
3. (sport) 
4. (art) 
5. (astronomy) 
6. (economics) 

**71.3** Which is right?

1. My favourite sport is tennis / the tennis. tennis is right
2. I like this hotel. Rooms / The rooms are very nice. The rooms is right
3. Everybody needs friends / the friends.
4. Jane doesn’t go to parties / the parties very often.
5. I went shopping this morning. Shops / The shops were very busy.
6. ‘Where’s milk / the milk?’ ‘It’s in the fridge.’
7. I don’t like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
8. ‘Do you do any sports?’ ‘Yes, I play football / the football.’
9. These days a lot of people use computers / the computers.
10. We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
11. I don’t like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
12. Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
13. I like this town. I like people / the people here.
14. Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.
15. ‘Where are children / the children?’ ‘They’re in the garden.’
16. I can’t sing this song. I don’t know words / the words.
17. I enjoy taking photographs / the photographs. It’s my hobby.
18. I must show you photographs / the photographs that I took when I was on holiday.
19. English / The English is used a lot in international business / the international business.
20. Money / The money doesn’t always bring happiness / the happiness.
the ... (names of places)

A
Places (continents, countries, states, islands, towns etc.)

In general we do not use the + names of places:
- France is a very large country. (not 'the France')
- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- Corsica is an island in the Mediterranean.
- Peru is in South America.

But we use the in names with 'republic'/'states'/'kingdom':
- the Republic of Ireland (or the Irish Republic)
- the United States of America (the USA)
- the United Kingdom (the UK)

B
the -s (plural names)

We use the + plural names of countries/islands/mountains:
- the Netherlands
- the Canary Islands
- the Philippines
- the Andes

C
Seas, rivers etc.

We use the + names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:
- the Atlantic (Ocean)
- the Mediterranean (Sea)
- the Amazon
- the (River) Nile
- the Suez Canal
- the Black Sea

D
Places in towns (streets, buildings etc.)

In general we do not use the + names of streets, squares etc.:
- Kevin lives in Newton Street.
- Where is Highfield Road, please?
- Times Square is in New York.

We do not use the + name of place (or person) + airport/station/university/castle etc.:
- Kennedy Airport
- Victoria Station
- Cambridge University
- Westminster Abbey
- Edinburgh Castle
- London Zoo

But usually we use the + names of hotels, restaurants, pubs, cinemas, theatres, museums:
- the Hilton (Hotel)
- the Science Museum
- the National Theatre
- the Star of India (restaurant)
- the Odeon (cinema)
- the Tate Gallery (art gallery)

E
the ... of ...

We use the + names with ... of ...:
- the Republic of Ireland
- the Great Wall of China
- the Bank of England
- the Tower of London

We say: the north / the south / the east / the west / the middle (of ...):
- I've been to the north of Italy but not to the south.
EXERCISES

UNIT 72

These are geography questions. Choose your answer from the box. Sometimes you need The.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Cairo is the capital of Egypt.</td>
<td>Cairo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>The Atlantic is between Africa and America.</td>
<td>The Atlantic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>is a country in northern Europe.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>is a river in South America.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>is the largest continent in the world.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>is the largest ocean.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>is a river in Europe.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>is a country in East Africa.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>is between Canada and Mexico.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>are mountains in South America.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>is the capital of Japan.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>are mountains in central Europe.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>is an island in the Mediterranean.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>are a group of islands near Florida.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

|                |                                                                           |              |
|                | Alps, Amazon, Andes, Asia, Atlantic, Bahamas, Cairo, Kenya, Malta, Pacific, Red Sea, Rhine, Sweden, Tokyo, United States |

Put in the where necessary. If the sentence is already correct, write OK.

1. Kevin lives in Newton Street. OK
2. We went to see a play at the National Theatre.
3. Have you ever been to China?
4. Have you ever been to Philippines?
5. Have you ever been to south of France?
6. Can you tell me where Regal Cinema is?
7. Can you tell me where Merrion Street is?
8. Can you tell me where Museum of Modern Art is?
9. Europe is bigger than Australia.
10. Belgium is smaller than Netherlands.
11. Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile?
12. Did you go to National Gallery when you were in London?
13. ‘Where did you stay?’ ‘At Park Hotel in Hudson Road.’
14. How far is it from Trafalgar Square to Victoria Station (in London)?
15. Rocky Mountains are in North America.
16. Texas is famous for oil and cowboys.
17. Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean.
18. I hope to go to United States next year.
19. Mary comes from a small town in west of Ireland.
20. Alan studied physics at Manchester University.
We use *this/that/these/those* with a noun (*this picture / that girl etc.*) or without a noun:
- **This hotel** is expensive but it's very nice.
- *Who's that girl?* ‘I don't know.’
- Do you like *these shoes?* I bought them last week.
- *Those apples* look nice. Can I have one?
- *This* is a nice hotel but it's very expensive.
- ‘Excuse me, is *this* your bag?’ ‘Oh yes, thank you.’
- *Who's that?* (= Who is that person?)
- Which shoes do you like most? *These* or *those?*

**that** = something that *has happened:*
- ‘I'm sorry I forgot to phone you.’ ‘That's all right.’
- *That* was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

**that** = what somebody *has just said:*
- ‘You're a teacher, aren't you?’ ‘Yes, *that's* right.’
- ‘Martin has got a new job.’ ‘Has he? I didn't know *that*.’
- ‘I'm going on holiday next week.’ ‘Oh, *that's* nice.’

We use *this is ... and is that ...?* on the telephone:
- Hello, *this* is David. (*this* = the speaker)
- Is *that* Sarah? (*that* = the other person)

We use *this is ...* to introduce people:
- A: Brian, *this is* Chris.
  B: Hello, Chris – pleased to meet you.
  C: Hello.
EXERCISES

73.1 Complete the sentences. Use this/that/these/those + these words:
birds  house  plates  postcards  seat  shoes

1. Do you like these shoes?
2. Who lives in ...?  ...?
3. How much are ...?

4. Look at ...
5. Excuse me, is ... free?
6. ... are dirty.

73.2 Write questions: Is this/that your ...? or Are these/those your ...?

1. Is this your bag?
2. ... a pity. Why not?
3. ... dirty.

4. (on the telephone)
Sue: Hello, Ann. ... Sue.
Ann: Oh, hello, Sue. How are you?

5. A: You're lazy.
B: ... not true!

73.3 Complete the sentences with this is or that's or that.

1. A: I'm sorry I'm late.
   B: That's all right.
2. A: I can't come to the party tomorrow.
   B: Oh, a pity. Why not?
3. Sue: Hello, Ann. ... Sue.
   Ann: Oh, hello, Sue. How are you?
   B: ... not true!
5. A: Jill plays the piano very well.
   B: Really? I didn't know ...
6. Mark meets Paul's sister (Ann):
   Paul: Mark, ... my sister, Ann.
   Mark: Hello, Ann.
7. A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.
   B: ... OK. Forget it!
8. A: You're a friend of John's, aren't you?
   B: Yes, ... right.
one/ones

A

one (= a …)

I need a pen. Have you got one? (one = a pen)

A: Is there a bank near here?
B: Yes, there’s one at the end of this street. (one = a bank)

B

one and ones

one (singular)

Which one? = Which hat?

one = hat/car/girl etc.

this one / that one
• Which car is yours? This one or that one? (= this car or that car)

the one …
• A: Which hotel did you stay at?
  B: The one opposite the station.

the … one
• I don’t like the black coat but I like the brown one.
• Don’t buy that camera. Buy the other one.

a/an … one
• This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
• That biscuit was nice. I’m going to have another one.

ones (plural)

Which ones? = Which flowers?

ones = flowers/cars/girls etc.

these/those (usually without ‘ones’):
• Which flowers do you want? These or those? (not usually ‘these ones/those ones’)

the ones …
• A: Which keys are yours?
  B: The ones on the table.

the … ones
• I don’t like the red shoes but I like the green ones.
• Don’t buy those apples. Buy the other ones.

some … ones
• These cups are dirty. Can we have some clean ones?
• My shoes are very old. I’m going to buy some new ones.
EXERCISES

74.1 A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use one (not a/an ...') in the answers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A has just had a cup of coffee</th>
<th>B hasn't got an umbrella</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>there's a chemist in Mill Road</td>
<td>B hasn't got a pen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B is going to buy a bicycle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B doesn't need a car</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A: Can you lend me a pen?  B: I'm sorry, I haven't got one.
2. A: Would you like to have a car?  B: No, I don't.
3. A: Have you got a bicycle?  B: No, but...
4. A: Can you lend me an umbrella?  B: I'm sorry but...
5. A: Would you like a cup of coffee?  B: No, thank you.
6. A: Is there a chemist near here?  B: Yes, ...

74.2 Complete the sentences. Use a/an ... one. Use the words in the list.

better big clean different new old

1. This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
2. I'm going to sell my car and buy a big one.
3. That's not a very good photograph but this is a better one.
4. I want today's newspaper. This is a new one.
5. This box is too small. I need a bigger one.
6. Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to a different one.

74.3 Use the information in the box to complete these conversations. Use one/ones.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A took the photographs on the beach last week</th>
<th>I took the photographs on the beach last week</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the coat is black</td>
<td>the coat is black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the girl is tall with long hair</td>
<td>the girl is tall with long hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the hotel is opposite the station</td>
<td>the hotel is opposite the station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the house has got a red door</td>
<td>the house has got a red door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the flowers are yellow</td>
<td>the flowers are yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the man has got a moustache and glasses</td>
<td>the man has got a moustache and glasses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A: We stayed at a hotel.  B: Which one?  A: The one opposite the station.
2. A: Those shoes are nice.  B: ...?  A:
3. A: That's a nice house.  B: ...?  A:
4. A: I like that coat.  B: ...?  A:
5. A: I like those pictures.  B: ...?  A:
6. A: Are those your books?  B: ...?  A:
7. A: Do you know that girl?  B: ...?  A:
8. A: Those flowers are beautiful.  B: ...?  A:
9. A: Who's that man?  B: ...?  A:
10. A: Have you seen my photographs?  B: ...?  A:
some and any

Use **some** in positive sentences:
- I’m going to buy some clothes.
- There’s some ice in the fridge.
- We did some exercises.

Use **any** in negative sentences:
- I’m not going to buy any clothes.
- There isn’t any orange juice in the fridge.
- We didn’t do any exercises.

**any** and **some** in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any**:
- Is there any ice in the fridge?
- Has he got any friends?
- Do you need any help?

We normally use **some** (not **any**) when we offer things (Would you like ...?):
- A: Would you like some coffee?
  B: Yes, please.

or when we ask for things (Can I have ...? etc.):
- A: Can I have some soup, please?
  B: Yes. Help yourself.
- A: Can you lend me some money?
  B: Sure. How much do you need?

**some** and **any** without a noun

- I didn’t take any photographs but Ann took some. (= some photographs)
- You can have some coffee but I don’t want any. (= any coffee)
- I’ve just made some coffee. Would you like some? (= some coffee)
- ‘Where’s your luggage?’ ‘I haven’t got any.’ (= any luggage)
- ‘Are there any biscuits?’ ‘Yes, there are some in the kitchen.’ (= some biscuits)

**something** / **somebody** (or **someone**)
- She said something.
- I saw somebody (or someone).
- Would you like something to eat?
- Quick! Somebody’s coming.

**anything** / **anybody** (or **anyone**)
- She didn’t say anything.
- I didn’t see anybody (or anyone).
- Are you doing anything this evening?
- Where’s Ann? Has anybody seen her?
EXERCISES

75.1 Put in some or any.

1 I bought some cheese but I didn’t buy any bread.
2 I’m going to the post office. I need some stamps.
3 There aren’t any shops in this part of town.
4 George and Alice haven’t got any children.
5 Have you got any brothers or sisters?
6 There are some beautiful flowers in the garden.
7 Do you know any good hotels in London?
8 ‘Would you like some tea?’ ‘Yes, please.’
9 When we were on holiday, we visited some very interesting places.
10 Don’t buy any rice. We don’t need any.
11 I went out to buy some milk but they didn’t have any in the shop.
12 I’m thirsty. Can I have some water, please?

75.2 Complete the sentences. Use some or any + one of these words:

air cheese help letters photographs
batteries friends languages milk shampoo

1 I want to wash my hair. Is there any shampoo?
2 This evening I’m going to write something.
3 I haven’t got my camera, so I can’t take any photographs.
4 Do you speak any foreign languages?
5 Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant with some of mine.
6 Can I have something in my coffee, please?
7 The radio isn’t working. There aren’t any batteries in it.
8 ‘Would you like some tea?’ ‘No, thank you. I’ve had enough to eat.’
9 I can do this job alone. I don’t need anybody.

75.3 Complete the sentences. Use some or any.

1 Ann didn’t take any photographs but I took some. (I/take)
2 ‘Where’s your luggage?’ ‘I haven’t got any.’ (I/not/have)
3 ‘Do you need any money?’ ‘No, thank you.’ (I/not/have)
4 ‘Can you lend me some money?’ ‘I’m sorry but I don’t have any.’ (I/not/have)
5 The tomatoes in the shop didn’t look very good, so I didn’t buy any. (I/not/buy)
6 There were some nice oranges in the shop, so I bought some. (I/buy)

75.4 Put in something/somebody/anything/anybody.

1 She said something to me but I didn’t understand it.
2 ‘What’s wrong?’ ‘There’s something in my eye.’
3 Do you know something about politics?
4 I went to the shop but I didn’t buy anything.
5 Somebody has broken the window. I don’t know who.
6 There isn’t anything in the bag. It’s empty.
7 I’m looking for my keys. Has anybody seen them?
8 Would you like something to drink?
9 I didn’t eat anything because I wasn’t hungry.
10 This is a secret. Please don’t tell anybody.

[159]
The car park is empty.
There aren't any cars in the car park.
How many cars are there in the car park? None.

**not (n’t) + any**
- There aren’t any cars in the car park.
- Sally and Steve haven’t got any children.
- You can have some coffee but I don’t want any.

**no + noun (no cars / no garden etc.)**
- There are no cars in the car park. (= there aren’t any cars)
- We’ve got no coffee. (= we haven’t got any coffee)
- It’s a nice house but there’s no garden. (= there isn’t a garden)

We use no ... especially after have (got) and there is/are.

**negative verb + any = positive verb + no:**
- They haven’t got any children. or They’ve got no children.
  (not ‘They haven’t got no children’)
- There isn’t any sugar in your coffee. or There’s no sugar in your coffee.

**no and none**

Use no + noun (no money / no children etc.):
- We’ve got no money.
- Everything was OK. There were no problems.

Use none alone (without a noun):
- ‘How much money have you got?’ None. (= no money)
- ‘Were there any problems?’ No, none. (= no problems)

**none and no-one**

**none** = 0 (zero)
None is an answer for How much?/How many? (things or people):
- ‘How much money have you got?’ None. (= no money)
- ‘How many people did you meet?’ None. (= no people)

**no-one** = nobody (⇒ Unit 77)
No-one is an answer for Who?:
- ‘Who did you meet?’ No-one. (or Nobody.)
EXERCISES

76.1 Write these sentences again with no.
1. We haven’t got any money.
2. There aren’t any shops near here.
3. Carol hasn’t got any free time.
4. There isn’t a light in this room.

Write these sentences again with any.
5. We’ve got no money.
6. There’s no tea in the pot.
7. There are no buses today.
8. Tom has got no brothers or sisters.

76.2 Put in no or any.

1. There’s .... sugar in your coffee.
2. My brother is married but he hasn’t got ...... children.
3. Sue doesn’t speak .......... foreign languages.
4. I’m afraid there’s .... coffee. Would you like some tea?
5. ‘Look at those birds!’ ‘Birds? Where? I can’t see .... birds.’
6. ‘Do you know where Jane is?’ ‘No, I’ve got .... idea.’

Put in no, any or none.

7. There aren’t .... pictures on the wall.
8. The weather was cold but there was .... wind.
9. I wanted to buy some oranges but they didn’t have .......... in the shop.
10. Everything was correct. There were .... mistakes.
11. ‘How much luggage have you got?’ .........
12. ‘How much luggage have you got?’ ‘I haven’t got ....’

76.3 Complete the sentences. Use any or no + one of these words:
answer difference film friends furniture heating money photographs problems questions

1. Everything was OK. There were .......... no problems.
2. They want to go on holiday but they’ve got .......... friends.
3. I’m not going to answer ..........................................
4. He’s always alone. He’s got ............
5. There is .......... difference between these two machines. They’re exactly the same.
6. There wasn’t ........................................................ in the room. It was completely empty.
7. I tried to phone you yesterday but there was .......... in the room.
8. The house is cold because there isn’t .................
9. I can’t take .......... There’s .......... in the camera.

76.4 Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use none where necessary.

1. How many letters did you write yesterday? Two. OR A lot. OR None.
2. How many sisters have you got?
3. How much coffee did you drink yesterday?
4. How many photographs have you taken today?
5. How many legs has a snake got?
not + anybody/anyone/anything
nobody/no-one/nothing

A

not + anybody/anyone
nobody/no-one
(for people)
- There isn't anybody in the room.
- There is nobody in the room.
- A: Who is in the room?
  B: Nobody. / No-one.

anybody = anyone  nobody = no-one
(-body and -one are the same)

not + anything
nothing
(for things)
- There isn't anything in the bag.
- There is nothing in the bag.
- A: What's in the bag?
  B: Nothing.

B

not + anybody/anyone
- I don't know anybody (or anyone) here.

nobody = not + anybody
no-one = not + anyone
- I'm lonely. I've got nobody to talk to.
  (= I haven't got anybody)
- The house is empty. There is no-one in it.
  (= There isn't anyone in it.)

not + anything
nothing
- I can't remember anything.

nothing = not + anything
- She said nothing.
  (= She didn't say anything.)
- There's nothing to eat.
  (= There isn't anything to eat.)

C

You can use nobody/no-one/nothing at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question):
- The house is empty. Nobody lives there.
  (not 'Anybody lives there')
- 'Who did you speak to?' 'No-one.'

- Nothing happened.
  (not 'Anything happened')
- 'What did you say?' 'Nothing.'

D

Remember: negative verb + anybody/anyone/anything
positive verb + nobody/no-one/nothing
- He doesn't know anything. (not 'He doesn't know nothing')
- Don't tell anybody. (not 'Don't tell nobody')
- There is nothing to do in this town. (not 'There isn't nothing')
EXERCISES

77.1 Write these sentences again with nobody/no-one or nothing.

1 There isn’t anything in the bag.
2 There isn’t anybody in the office.
3 I haven’t got anything to do.
4 There isn’t anything on TV.
5 There wasn’t anyone at home.
6 We didn’t find anything.

77.2 Write these sentences again with anybody/anyone or anything.

1 There’s nothing in the bag.
2 There was nobody on the bus.
3 I’ve got nothing to read.
4 I’ve got no-one to help me.
5 She heard nothing.
6 We’ve got nothing for dinner.

77.3 Answer these questions with nobody/no-one or nothing.

1a What did you say? Nothing...
2a Who saw you? Nobody...
3a What do you want?...
4a Who did you meet?...

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.
Use nobody/no-one/nothing or anybody/anyone/anything.

1b I didn’t say anything...
2b Nobody saw me...
3b I don’t...
4b I...

77.4 Complete the sentences. Use nobody/no-one/nothing/anybody/anyone/anything.

1 That house is empty. Nobody...
2 Jack has a bad memory. He can’t remember anything...
3 Be quiet! Don’t say...
4 I didn’t know about the meeting. Told me.
5 ‘What did you have to eat?’ I wasn’t hungry.’
6 I didn’t eat. I wasn’t hungry.
7 Jenny was sitting alone. She wasn’t with...
8 I’m afraid I can’t help you. There’s I can do.
9 I don’t know about car engines.
10 The museum is free. It doesn’t cost to go in.
11 I heard a knock on the door but when I opened it there was there.
12 She spoke very fast. I didn’t understand.
13 ‘What are you doing this evening?’ Why?’
14 Helen has gone away. knows where she is. She didn’t tell where she was going.
somebody/anything/nowhere etc.

A

Somebody (or someone) has broken the window.

She has got something in her mouth.

Tom lives somewhere near London.

Somebody/someone = a person but we don't know who

something = a thing but we don't know what

somewhere = in/to a place but we don't know where

B

people (-body or -one)

-body and -one are the same: somebody = someone, nobody = no-one etc.

things (-thing)

something

anything

nothing

She said something but I didn't understand her.

Are you doing anything at the weekend?

I was angry but I didn't say anything.

‘What did you say?’ ‘Nothing.’

places (-where)

somewhere

anywhere

nowhere

They live somewhere in the south of England.

Did you go anywhere interesting for your holidays?

I'm staying here. I'm not going anywhere.

I don't like this town. There is nowhere to go.

C

something/anybody etc. + adjective (big/cheap/interesting etc.)

Did you meet anybody interesting at the party?

We always go to the same place. Let's go somewhere different.

‘What's that letter?’ ‘It's nothing important.’

D

something/anybody etc. + to ...

I'm hungry. I want something to eat. (= something that I can eat)

He hasn't got anybody to talk to. (= anybody that he can talk to)

There is nowhere to go in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)
EXERCISES

78.1 Put in somebody (or someone) / something / somewhere.

1 She said ..............................
2 I’ve lost ..............................
3 They went ..............................
4 I’m going to phone ..............................

What did she say?  
What have you lost?  
Where did they go?  
Who are you going to phone?

78.2 Put in nobody (or no-one) / nothing / nowhere.

1a What did you say?  
2a Where are you going?  
3a What do you want?  
4a Who are you looking for?

Nothing .................

Now answer the same questions with full sentences. Use not + anybody/anything/anywhere.

1b I didn’t say anything.  
2b I’m not ..............................
3b ..............................
4b ..............................

78.3 Put in somebody/anything/nowhere etc.

1 It’s dark. I can’t see .................
2 Tom lives somewhere near London.
3 Do you know ................. about computers?
4 ‘Listen!’ ‘What? I can’t hear .................’
5 ‘What are you doing here?’ ‘I’m waiting for .................’
6 Please listen carefully. There’s ................. I want to tell you.
7 ‘Did you see the accident?’ ‘No, .................’
8 We weren’t hungry, so we didn’t eat .................
9 ‘What’s going to happen?’ ‘I don’t know. ................. knows.’
10 ‘Do you know ................. in London?’ ‘Yes, a few people.’
11 ‘What’s in that cupboard?’ ‘ .................’ ‘It’s empty.’
12 I’m looking for my glasses. I can’t find them .................
13 I don’t like cold weather. I want to live ................. warm.
14 Is there ................. interesting on television tonight?
15 Have you ever met ................. famous?

78.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from Box A and Box B.

A  
something anything nothing somewhere anywhere nowhere

You can use these words more than once.

B  
do drink eat go  
play read sit stay

1 We don’t go out very much because there’s ................. to go.
2 There isn’t any food in the house. We haven’t got .................
3 I’m bored. I’ve got .................
4 ‘Why are you standing?’ ‘Because there isn’t .................’
5 ‘Would you like .................?’ ‘Yes, please – a glass of orange juice.’
6 All the hotels were full. There was .................
7 I want ................. I’m going to buy a magazine.
8 Children need .................
every and all

A every

Every house in the street is the same.
every house in the street = all the houses
in the street

We use every + singular noun (every house / every country etc.):

• Alice has been to every country in Europe.
• Every summer we have a holiday by the sea.
• She looks different every time I see her.

Use a singular verb after every …:

• Every house in the street is the same. (not ‘are the same’)
• Every country has a national flag. (not ‘have’)

Compare every and all:

• Every student in the class passed the exam.
• Every country has a national flag.
• All the students in the class passed the exam.
• All countries have a national flag.

B every day and all day

every day = on all days:

how often?

SUN MON TUE WED THUR FRI SAT

EVERY DAY

• A: How often do you read a newspaper?
B: Every day.
• Bill watches TV for about two hours every evening. (= on all evenings)

also every morning/night/summer etc.

all day = the complete day:

how long?

Beginning of the day ALL DAY End of the day

• The weather was bad yesterday. It rained all day.
• I was tired after work yesterday, so I watched TV all evening. (= the complete evening)

also all morning/night/summer etc.

C everybody (or everyone) / everything / everywhere

everybody or everyone (people)
everything (things)
everywhere (places)

• Everybody (or Everyone) needs friends. (= all people need friends)
• Have you got everything you need? (= all the things you need)
• I’ve lost my watch. I’ve looked everywhere for it.
  (= I’ve looked in all places)

Use a singular verb after everybody/everyone/everything:

• Everybody has problems. (not ‘Everybody have’)

[166]
EXERCISES

79.1 Complete the sentences. Use every + one of these words:

day  room student time word

1 Every student in the class passed the exam.
2 My job is very boring. is the same.
3 Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play, she wins in the hotel has a private bathroom.
4 ‘Did you understand what she said?’ ‘Most of it but not ‘

79.2 Complete the sentences with every day or all day.

1 Yesterday it rained all day.
2 I buy a newspaper but sometimes I don’t read it.
3 I’m not going out tomorrow. I’ll be at home
4 I usually drink about four cups of coffee.
5 Paula was ill yesterday, so she stayed in bed.
6 Last year we went to the seaside for a week and it rained.
7 I’m tired now because I’ve been working hard.

79.3 Put in every or all.

1 Bill watches TV for about two hours every evening.
2 Barbara gets up at 6.30 morning.
3 The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat in the garden afternoon.
4 I’m going away on Monday. I’ll be away week.
5 ‘How often do you go skiing?’ ‘year. Usually in March.’
6 A: Were you at home at 10 o’clock yesterday?
   B: Yes, I was at home morning. I went out after lunch.
7 My sister likes cars. She buys a new one year.
8 I saw Jack at the party. He wasn’t very friendly. He didn’t speak to me evening.
9 We go away on holiday for two or three weeks summer.

79.4 Put in everybody/everything/everywhere.

1 Everybody needs friends.
2 Chris knows about computers.
3 I like the people here. is very friendly.
4 This is a nice hotel. It’s comfortable and is very clean.
5 Kevin never uses his car. He goes by motor-bike.
6 Let’s have dinner. is hungry.
7 Sue’s house is full of books. There are books everywhere.
8 You are right. you say is true.

79.5 Put in a verb (one word).

1 Everybody has problems.
2 Are you ready yet? Everybody waiting for you.
3 The house is empty. Everyone gone out.
4 George is very popular. Everybody him.
5 This town is completely different. Everything changed.
6 I arrived home very late. I came in quietly because everyone asleep.
7 Everybody mistakes!
A

Compare:

children/money/books etc. (in general):
- Children like playing. (= children in general)
- Money isn't everything. (= money in general)
- I enjoy reading books.
- Everybody needs friends.

the children / the money / these books etc.:
- Where are the children? (= our children)
- I want to buy a car but I haven't got the money. (= the money for a car)
- Have you read these books?
- I often go out with my friends.

B

most/most of ... , some/some of ... etc.

most/some etc. + noun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>some</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>children</td>
<td>cities</td>
<td>books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>money</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Most children like playing. (= children in general)
- I don't want any money.
- Some books are better than others.
- He's got no friends.
- All cities have the same problems. (= cities in general)

Do not use of in these sentences:
- Most people drive too fast. (not 'Most of people')
- Some birds can't fly. (not 'Some of birds')

most of/some of etc. + the/this/my ... etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>of</th>
<th>the ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>most</td>
<td>some</td>
<td>this/that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>these/those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>none</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>my/your</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Most of the children at this school are under 11 years old.
- I don't want any of this money.
- Some of these books are very old.
- None of my friends live near me.

We say all the ... / all my ... etc. (usually without of):
- All the students in our class passed the exam.
- Silvia has lived in London all her life.

C

all of it / most of them / none of us etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>none</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- You can have some of this cake but not all of it.
- A: Do you know those people?
  B: Most of them, but not all of them.
- Some of us are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- I've got a lot of books but I haven't read any of them.
- 'How many of these books have you read?' 'None of them.'
EXERCISES

Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets (some/most etc.). Sometimes you need of (some of / most of etc.).

1. **Most** children like playing. (most)
2. **Some of** this money is yours. (some)
3. **Some people** never stop talking. (some)
4. **Most of** the shops in the city centre close at 6.30. (most)
5. You can change your money in **most banks**. (most)
6. I don’t like **any** the pictures in the living room. (any)
7. He’s lost **all** his money. (all)
8. **Some of** my friends are married. (none)
9. Do you know **any** the people in this photograph? (any)
10. **Most birds** can fly. (most)
11. I enjoyed **the film** but I didn’t like the ending. (most)
12. **Some of** sports are very dangerous. (some)
13. We can’t find anywhere to stay. **All the hotels are full.** (all)
14. You must have **this cheese.** It’s delicious. (some)
15. The weather was bad when we were on holiday. It rained **most of the time.** (most)

Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use all/most/some/none + of them / of it.

1. How many of the people are women?
2. How many of the boxes are on the table?
3. How many of the men are wearing hats?
4. How many of the windows are open?
5. How many of the people are standing?
6. How much of the money is Ben’s?

Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong. Write OK if the sentence is correct.

1. **Most of children** like playing. (Most children)
2. All the students failed the exam. **OK**
3. Some of people work too hard.
4. Some of questions in the exam were very easy.
5. I haven’t seen any of those people before.
6. All of insects have six legs.
7. Have you read all these books?
8. Most of students in our class are very nice.
9. Most of my friends are going to the party.
10. I’m very tired this morning – I was awake most of night.
We use both/either/neither to talk about two things or people:

- Rosemary has two children. Both are married. (Both = the two children)
- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have either. (= tea or coffee)
- A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre?
  B: Neither. I want to stay at home. (Neither = not the cinema or the theatre)

Compare either and neither:

- ‘Would you like tea or coffee?’
  ‘Either. I don’t mind.’ (= tea or coffee)
  ‘I don’t want either.’ (not ‘I don’t want neither’)
  ‘Neither.’ (= not tea or coffee)

both/either/neither + noun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Both</th>
<th>Both windows/books/children etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Either</td>
<td>Either window/book/child etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked both cities very much.
- First I worked in an office, and later in a shop. Neither job was very interesting.
- There are two ways from here to the station. You can go either way.

both of ... / either of ... / neither of ...

- Neither of my parents is English.
- I haven’t read either of these books.

You can say both (of) the ... / both (of) those ... / both (of) my ... etc. (with or without of):

- I like both of those pictures. or I like both those pictures.
- Both of Ann’s sisters are married. or Both Ann’s sisters are married.

both of them / neither of us etc.

- Ann has got two sisters. Both of them are married.
- Tom and I didn’t eat anything. Neither of us was hungry.
- Who are those two people? I don’t know either of them.
EXERCISES

81.1 Put in both/either/neither. Use of where necessary.

1. Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked both cities very much.
2. There were two pictures on the wall. I didn’t like either of them.
3. It was a good football match. Both teams played well.
4. It wasn’t a good football match. Neither team played well.
5. ‘Is your friend English or American?’ ‘Neither. She’s Australian.’
6. We went away for two days but the weather wasn’t good. It rained on both days.
7. A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?
   B: Neither. It doesn’t matter which one.
8. I invited Diana and Mike to the party but neither of them came.
9. ‘Do you go to work by car or by bus?’ ‘Neither. I always walk.’
10. ‘Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?’ ‘Neither. I don’t like either of them.’
11. ‘Do you work or are you a student?’ ‘Neither. I’ve got a job and I study too.’
12. Paula and I didn’t know the time because neither of us had a watch.
13. Ann has got two sisters and a brother. Neither of her sisters are married.
14. Ann has got two sisters and a brother. I’ve met her brother but I haven’t met either of her sisters.

81.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use Both … and Neither ….

1. Both cups are empty.
2. .......... are open.
3. ................ wearing a hat.
4. ................ cameras.
5. ................ to the airport.
6. ............ right.

81.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with Both/Neither of them ….

1. Are you married? No
   2. How old are you? 21
   3. Are you a student? Yes
   4. Have you got a car? No
   6. Do you like cooking? Yes
   7. Can you play the piano? No
   8. Do you read newspapers? Yes
   9. Are you interested in sport? No

- Both of them are 21.
- Neither of them is married.
- .......... students.
- .......... a car.
- .......... London.
- .......... Yes.
- .......... No.
- .......... Yes.
- .......... No.
### Unit 82: a lot, much, many

**A**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a lot of money</th>
<th>not much money</th>
<th>a lot of books</th>
<th>not many books</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**We use much + uncountable noun:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>much food / much money etc.:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Did you buy much food?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• We haven’t got much luggage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• How much money do you want?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• A: Have you got any money?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• B: I’ve got some but not much.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**We use many + plural noun:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>many books / many people etc.:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Did you buy many books?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• We don’t know many people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• How many photographs did you take?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• A: Did you take any photographs?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• B: I took some but not many.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**We use a lot of + all types of noun:**

| • We bought a lot of food.     |
| • Paula hasn’t got a lot of free time. |

**Note that we say:**

| • There is a lot of food/money/water ... |
| (singular verb) |
| • There are a lot of trees/shops/people ... |
| (plural verb) |
| • A lot of people speak English. (not ‘speaks’) |

**B**

We use much in questions and negative sentences, but not usually in positive sentences:

- Do you drink much coffee / a lot of coffee?
- I don’t drink much coffee / a lot of coffee.

*but*

- I drink a lot of coffee. (not ‘I drink much coffee.’)
- ‘Do you drink much coffee?’ ‘Yes, a lot.’ (not ‘much’)

We use many and a lot of in all types of sentences:

- Have you got many friends / a lot of friends?
- We haven’t got many friends / a lot of friends.
- We’ve got many friends / a lot of friends.

**C**

**much and a lot without a noun**

- Diane spoke to me but she didn’t say much.
- ‘Do you watch TV much?’ ‘No, not much.’ (= not often)
- We like films, so we go to the cinema a lot. (not ‘much’ – See section B)
- I don’t like him very much.
EXERCISES

82.1 Put in **much** or **many**.

1. Did you buy **much** food?
2. There aren’t **many** hotels in this town.
3. We haven’t got **much** petrol.
4. Were there **many** people on the train?
5. Did **many** students fail the examination?
6. Paula hasn’t got **much** money.
7. I wasn’t very hungry. I didn’t eat **much**.
8. I haven’t seen George for **many** years.

Put in **How much** or **How many**.

9. **How many** people are coming to the party?
10. **How much** milk do you want in your coffee?
11. **How much** bread did you buy?
12. **How many** players are there in a football team?

82.2 Complete the sentences. Use **much** or **many** with one of these words:

- books
- countries
- luggage
- people
- time
- times

1. I don’t read very **much**. I haven’t got **many** books.
2. Quick! We must hurry. We haven’t got **much** time.
3. Do you travel a **lot**? Have you been to **many** countries?
4. Tina hasn’t lived here very **long**, so she doesn’t know **many** people.
5. ‘Have you got **much** luggage?’ ‘No, only this bag.’
6. I know Paris very well. I’ve been there **a lot of times**.

82.3 Complete the sentences with a **lot of** + one of these:

- accidents
- books
- fun
- interesting things
- traffic

1. I like reading. I have **a lot of books**.
2. We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw **a lot of interesting things**.
3. This road is very dangerous. There are **a lot of accidents**.
4. We enjoyed our holiday. We had **a lot of fun**.
5. It took me a long time to drive here. There was **a lot of traffic**.

82.4 In some of these sentences **much** is not natural. Change the sentences or write **OK**.

1. Do you drink **much** coffee?
2. I drink **much tea**.
3. It was a cold **winter**. We had **much snow**.
4. There wasn’t **much snow** last winter.
5. It costs **much money** to travel around the world.
6. We had a cheap holiday. It didn’t cost **much**.
7. Do you know **much** about computers?
8. ‘Have you got any luggage?’ ‘Yes, **much**.’

82.5 Write sentences about these people. Use **much** and **a lot**.

1. Jim loves films. (go to the cinema)
2. Linda thinks TV is boring. (watch TV)
3. Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis)
4. Martin doesn’t like driving. (use his car)
5. Paul spends most of the time at home. (go out)
6. Sue has been all over the world. (travel)

He goes to the cinema **a lot**.

She doesn’t watch TV **much**.
(a) little  (a) few

A

(a) little water
(a) little + uncountable noun:
(a) little water (a) little money (a) little time (a) little soup

(a) few books
(a) few + plural noun:
(a) few books (a) few questions (a) few people (a) few days

B

(a) little = some but not much:
• She didn’t eat anything but she drank a little water.
• I speak a little Spanish. (= some Spanish but not much)
• A: Can you speak Spanish?
  B: A little.

(a) few = some but not many:
• Last night I wrote a few letters.
• We’re going away for a few days.
• I speak a few words of Spanish.
• A: Are there any shops in the village?
  B: Yes, a few.

C

(a) little (without a) = nearly no ... or nearly nothing:
• There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

You can say very little:
• Dan is very thin because he eats very little. (= nearly nothing)

(a) few (without a) = nearly no ... :
• There were few people in the park. It was nearly empty.

You can say very few:
• Your English is very correct. You make very few mistakes.

D

little and a little:
(a) little is a positive idea:
• They have a little money, so they’re not poor. (= they have some money)

(a) little is a negative idea:
• They have little money. They are very poor. (= nearly no money)

I’ve got a little money. I’ve got little money.

few and a few:
(a) few is a positive idea:
• I’ve got a few friends, so I’m not lonely. (= I’ve got some friends)

(a) few is a negative idea:
• I’m sad and I’m lonely. I’ve got few friends. (= nearly no friends)

I’ve got a few friends. I’ve got few friends.
EXERCISES

83.1 Answer the questions with a little or a few.
1  ‘Have you got any money?’ ‘Yes, a little.’
2  ‘Have you got any envelopes?’ ‘Yes, please.’
3  ‘Do you want sugar in your coffee?’ ‘Yes, please.’
4  ‘Did you take any photographs when you were on holiday?’ ‘Yes, please.’
5  ‘Does your friend speak English?’ ‘Yes, please.’
6  ‘Are there any factories in this town?’ ‘Yes, please.’

83.2 Put in a little or a few + one of these words:
air chairs days friends letter milk Russian times
1 Last night I wrote a few letters to my family and friends.
2 Can I have a little milk in my coffee, please?
3 ‘When did Julia go away?’ ‘Two days ago.’
4 ‘Do you speak any foreign languages?’ ‘I can speak Russian.’
5 ‘Are you going out alone?’ ‘No, I’m going with a few friends.’
6 ‘Have you ever been to Rome?’ ‘Yes, a few times.’
7 There wasn’t much furniture in the room – just a table and a few chairs.
8 I’m going out for a walk. I need a little fresh air.

83.3 Complete the sentences. Use very little or very few + one of these words:
coffee hotels mistakes people rain time work
1 Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.
2 I drink coffee. I don’t like it.
3 The weather here is very dry in summer. There is very little rain.
4 It’s difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are few hotels.
5 We must hurry. We’ve got very little time to think about it.
6 The town is very quiet at night. Few people go out.
7 Some people in the office are very lazy. They do very little work.

83.4 Put in little / a little / few / a few.
1 There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.
2 ‘When did Sarah go out?’ ‘A little while ago.’
3 I can’t decide now. I need a little more time to think about it.
4 There was heavy traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.
5 The bus service isn’t very good at night – there are few buses after 9 o’clock.
6 ‘Would you like some soup?’ ‘Yes, please.’
7 I’d like to practise my English more but I have little opportunity.

83.5 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is correct.
1 We’re going away (for few days) next week. for a few days
2 Everybody needs little luck.
3 I can’t talk to you now – I’ve got few things to do.
4 I eat very little meat – I don’t like it very much.
5 Excuse me, can I ask you few questions? few
6 There were little people on the bus – it was nearly empty.
old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)

A adjective + noun (nice day / blue eyes etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective + noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It's a nice day today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laura has got brown eyes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There's a very old bridge in this village.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like Italian food?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't speak any foreign languages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are some beautiful foreign flowers in the garden.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The adjective is before the noun:
- They live in a modern house. (not 'a house modern')
- Have you met any famous people? (not 'people famous')

The ending of an adjective is always the same:
- a different place
- different places (not 'differents')

B be (am/is/was etc.) + adjective

- The weather is nice today.
- These flowers are very beautiful.
- Are you cold? Shall I close the window?
- I'm hungry. Can I have something to eat?
- The film wasn't very good. It was boring.
- Please be quiet. I'm reading.

C look/feel/smell/taste/sound + adjective

- You look tired. 'Yes, I feel tired.'
- George told me about his new job. It sounds very interesting.
- Don't cook that meat. It doesn't smell good.

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He (is)</th>
<th>feels</th>
<th>tired.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>looks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>They (are)</th>
<th>look</th>
<th>sound</th>
<th>American.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>It (is)</th>
<th>smells</th>
<th>tastes</th>
<th>good.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
EXERCISES

84.1 Put the words in the right order.
1 (new / live in / house / they / a)  They live in a new house.
2 (like / jacket / I / that / green)  I ..............................................................
3 (music / like / do / classical / you?)  Do ..............................................................?
4 (had / wonderful / a / I / holiday) ..............................................................
5 (went to / restaurant / a / Chinese / we) ..............................................................

84.2 The words in the box are adjectives (black/foreign etc.) or nouns (air/job etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>air</th>
<th>black</th>
<th>clouds</th>
<th>foreign</th>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>job</th>
<th>languages</th>
<th>sharp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 Do you speak any foreign languages?
2 Look at those .............................................. . It's going to rain.
3 Sue works very hard and she's very tired. She needs a ..............................................................
4 I want to have a bath but there's no ..............................................................
5 Can you open the window? We need some ..............................................................
6 I need a .............................................. to cut these onions.
7 Fire-fighting is a ..............................................................

84.3 Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from Box A and Box B.

A
- feel(s)
- look(s)
- sound(s)

Box A

B
- happy
- ill
- nice
- horrible
- new
- surprised

1 You sound happy.
2 It ..............................................................
3 I ..............................................................
4 You ..............................................................
5 They ..............................................................
6 It ..............................................................

84.4 A and B don't agree. Complete B's sentences. Use the word in brackets (...).

A

1 You look tired.
2 This is a new coat.
3 I'm American.
4 You look cold.
5 These bags are heavy.
6 That soup looks good.

B

Do I? I don't feel tired.
Is it? It .............................................................. (feel)
Are you? You .............................................................. (sound)
Do I? I .............................................................. (feel)
Are they? They .............................................................. (look)
Does it? It .............................................................. (taste)
quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)

Quickly and suddenly are adverbs.

Adjectives tell you how something happens or how somebody does something:
- The train stopped suddenly.
- I opened the door slowly.
- Please listen carefully.
- I understand you perfectly.

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective (⇒ Unit 84)</th>
<th>adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sue is very quiet.</td>
<td>Sue speaks very quietly. (not 'speaks very quiet')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Be careful!</td>
<td>Listen carefully! (not 'listen careful')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It was a bad game.</td>
<td>Our team played badly. (not 'played bad')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I feel nervous. (= I am nervous)</td>
<td>I waited nervously.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These words are adjectives and adverbs:

- Sue's job is very hard.
- Ben is a fast runner.
- The bus was late/early.

good (adjective) → well (adverb)

- Your English is very good.
- It was a good game.

But well is also an adjective (= not ill, in good health):
- 'How are you?'  'I'm very well, thank you. And you?'
EXERCISES

85.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with one of these adverbs:
angrily  badly  dangerously  fast  heavily  quietly

1. It's raining **heavily**.
2. He sings very ____________________ .
3. They came in ____________________ .
4. She shouted at me ____________________ .
5. She can run very ____________________ .
6. He was driving ____________________ .

85.2 Choose a verb (Box A) + an adverb (Box B) to complete the sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>win</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explain</td>
<td>listen</td>
<td>think</td>
<td>work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>clearly</td>
<td>hard</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>easily</td>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I'm going to tell you something very important, so please **listen carefully**.
2. Ann! I need your help. ____________________ !
3. They ____________________ . At the end of the day they're always tired.
4. I'm tired this morning. I didn't ____________________ last night.
5. You're a much better tennis player than me. When we play, you always ____________________ .
6. ____________________ before you answer the question.
7. I've met Alice a few times but I don't ____________________ her very ____________________ .
8. Our teacher isn't very good. Sometimes he doesn't ____________________ things very ____________________ .

85.3 Which is right?

1. Don't eat so **quick**/quickly. It's not good for you. **quickly** is right
2. Why are you **angry**/angrily? I haven't done anything.
3. Can you speak **slow**/slowly, please?
4. Come on, Dave! Why are you always so **slow**/slowly?
5. Bill is a very **careful**/carefully driver.
6. Jane is studying **hard**/hardly for her examinations.
7. "Where's Diane?" 'She was here but she left **sudden**/suddenly.'
8. Please be **quiet**/quietly. I'm studying.
9. Some companies pay their workers very **bad**/badly.
10. Those oranges look **nice**/nicely. Can I have one?

85.4 Put in **good** or **well**.

1. Your English is very **good**. You speak English very **well**.
2. Jackie did very **well** in her exams.
3. The party was very **well**. I enjoyed it very much.
4. Martin has a difficult job but he does it **well**.
5. How are your parents? Are they **well**?
6. Did you have a **good** holiday? Was the weather **well**?
Older / heavier / more expensive are comparative forms. The comparative is -er (older) or more ... (more expensive).

-er (older/heavier etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short words (1 syllable)</th>
<th>-er:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>old → older</td>
<td>slow → slower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice → nicer</td>
<td>late → later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap → cheaper</td>
<td>big → bigger</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spelling (⇒ Appendix 5):
- Words ending in -y → -ier:
  - easy → easier
  - heavy → heavier
  - early → earlier

- Rome is old but Athens is older. (not 'more old')
- Is it cheaper to go by car or by train? (not 'more cheap')
- Helen wants a bigger car.
- This coat is OK but I think the other one is nicer.
- Don’t write a letter. It’s easier to phone. (not ‘more easy’)

far → further:
- ‘How far is it to the station? A mile?’ ‘No, it’s further. About two miles.’

more ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Long words (2/3/4 syllables)</th>
<th>more ...:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>careful → more careful</td>
<td>polite → more polite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expensive → more expensive</td>
<td>interesting → more interesting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- You must be more careful.
- I don’t like my job. I want to do something more interesting.
- Is it more expensive to go by car or by train?

- The weather wasn’t very good yesterday but it’s better today.
- ‘Do you feel better today?’ ‘No, I feel worse.’
- Which is worse – a headache or a toothache?
EXERCISES

86.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (older / more interesting etc.).

[Images of pictures with comparative adjectives written: heavy, heavier; big; slow; expensive, more expensive; high; dangerous.]

86.2 Write the comparative.

1 old older
2 strong stronger
3 happy happier
4 modern more modern
5 important more important
6 good better
7 large larger
8 serious more serious
9 pretty more pretty
10 crowded more crowded

86.3 Write the opposite.

1 younger younger
2 colder colder
3 cheaper cheaper
4 better better
5 nearer nearer
6 larger larger
7 serious less serious
8 poor more pretty
9 crowded less crowded

86.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

1 Helen’s car isn’t very big. She wants a _______ one.
2 My job isn’t very interesting. I want to do something _______.
3 You’re not very tall. Your brother is _______.
4 David doesn’t work very hard. I work _______.
5 My chair isn’t very comfortable. Yours is _______.
6 Your plan isn’t very good. My plan is _______.
7 These flowers aren’t very nice. The blue ones are _______.
8 My bag isn’t very heavy. Your bag is _______.
9 I’m not very interested in art. I’m _______ in history.
10 It isn’t very warm today. It was _______ yesterday.
11 These tomatoes don’t taste very good. The other ones tasted _______.
12 Britain isn’t very big. France is _______.
13 London isn’t very beautiful. Paris is _______.
14 This knife isn’t very sharp. Have you got a _______ one?
15 People today aren’t very polite. In the past they were _______.

[181]
older than … more expensive than …

A

She’s taller than him.

The Europa Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

We use than after comparatives (older than … / more expensive than … etc.):

- Athens is older than Rome.
- Are oranges more expensive than bananas?
- It’s easier to phone than to write a letter.
- ‘How are you today?’ ‘Not bad. Better than yesterday.’
- The restaurant is more crowded than usual.

B

We say: than me / than him / than her / than us / than them. You can say:

- I can run faster than him. or I can run faster than he can.
- You are a better singer than me. or You are a better singer than I am.
- I got up earlier than her. or I got up earlier than she did.

C

more/less than …

- A: How much did your shoes cost? £30?
  B: No, more than that. (= more than £30)
- The film was very short – less than an hour.
- They’ve got more money than they need.
- You go out more than me.

D

a bit older / much older etc.

Box A is a bit bigger than Box B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a bit</th>
<th>bigger</th>
<th>older</th>
<th>better</th>
<th>than …</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Box C is much bigger than Box D.

- Canada is much bigger than France.
- Jill is a bit older than Gary – she’s 25 and he’s 24.
- The hotel was much more expensive than I expected.
- You go out much more than me.
EXERCISES

87.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use than.

1. I'm 26.
2. I'm not a very good swimmer.
3. I'm 1 metre 68 tall.
4. I start work at 8 o'clock.
5. I don't work very hard.
6. I haven't got much money.
7. I'm a very good driver.
8. I'm not very patient.
9. I'm not a very good dancer.
10. I'm very intelligent.
11. I speak French very well.
12. I don't go to the cinema very much.

Liz is older than Ben.
Liz is a better swimmer than Ben.
Liz is 1 metre 65 tall.
Liz starts work at 8.30.
Liz work very hard.
Liz has got a lot of money.
Liz is not a very good driver.
Liz is very patient.
Liz is a very good dancer.
Liz is not very intelligent.
Liz doesn't speak French very well.
Liz goes to the cinema a lot.

87.2 Complete the sentences. Use than.

1. He isn't very tall. You are taller than him. (OR — than he is.)
2. She isn't very old. You're older.
3. I don't work very hard. You work harder.
4. He doesn't watch TV very much. You watch more.
5. I'm not a very good cook. You cook better.
6. We don't know many people. You know more people.
7. They haven't got much money. You have more money.
8. I can't run very fast. You can run faster.
9. She hasn't been here very long. You've been here longer.
10. They didn't get up very early. You got up earlier.
11. He wasn't very surprised. You were more surprised.

87.3 Complete the sentences with a bit or much + a comparative (older/better etc.).

1. Jill is 25. Gary is 24½.
   Jill is a bit older than Gary.
2. Jack's mother is 54. His father is 69.
   Jack's mother is much older than Jack's father.
3. My camera cost £100. Yours cost £96.
   My camera is a bit cheaper than yours.
4. Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel OK.
   I feel much better today.
5. Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it was ten degrees.
   It's much warmer today.
6. Ann is an excellent tennis player. I'm not very good.
   Ann is much better than I am.
not as ... as

A
not as ... as

Rome is not as old as Athens. (= Athens is older)
The Grand Hotel isn't as expensive as the Europa. (= the Europa is more expensive)
I don't play tennis as often as you. (= you play more often)
The weather is better than it was yesterday. It isn't as cold. (= as cold as it was yesterday)

B
not as much as ... / not as many as ...

I haven't got as much money as you. (= you've got more money)
I don't know as many people as you. (= you know more people)
I don't go out as much as you. (= you go out more)

C

Compare not as ... as and than:

Rome is not as old as Athens.
Athens is older than Rome. (not 'older as Rome')
Tennis isn't as popular as football.
Football is more popular than tennis.
I don't go out as much as you.
You go out more than me.

D

We say: as me / as him / as her etc. You can say:

She's not as old as him. or She's not as old as he is.
You don't work as hard as me. or You don't work as hard as I do.

E

We say the same as ...:

The weather today is the same as yesterday.
My hair is the same colour as yours.
I arrived at the same time as Tim.
EXERCISES

88.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.

1 A is bigger than C but not as big as B.
2 A is .................................................. B but not .................................................. C.
3 C is .......................................................... A but ..........................................................
4 A is .......................................................... but ..........................................................
5 B has got ..........................................................
6 C works ..........................................................

88.2 Write sentences with as ... as .......

1 Athens is older than Rome. Rome isn’t as old as Athens.
2 My room is bigger than yours. Your room isn’t ..................................................
3 You got up earlier than me. I didn’t ..........................................................
4 We played better than them. They ..........................................................
5 I’ve been here longer than you. You ..........................................................
6 She’s more nervous than him. He ..........................................................

88.3 Put in as or than.

1 Athens is older than Rome. 5 Jim isn’t as clever…………………………… he thinks.
2 I don’t watch TV as much as you. 6 Belgium is smaller than Switzerland.
3 You eat more than me. 7 Brazil isn’t as big as Canada.
4 I feel better than I felt yesterday. 8 I can’t wait longer than an hour.

88.4 Use the information to complete the sentences about Julia, Andrew and Caroline. Use the same age / the same street etc.

JULIA

I’m 22.
I live in Hill Street.
I got up at 7.15.
I haven’t got a car.

ANDREW

I’m 24.
I live in Baker Street.
I got up at 7.15.
My car is dark blue.

CAROLINE

I’m 24.
I live in Hill Street.
I got up at 7.45.
I’ve got a car.
It’s dark blue.

1 (age) Andrew is the same age as Caroline.
2 (street) Julia lives ..........................................................
3 (time) Julia got up ..........................................................
4 (colour) Andrew’s ..........................................................
Box A is bigger than Box B.

Box A is bigger than all the other boxes.

Box A is the biggest box.

The superlative form is -est (oldest) or most ... (most expensive):

### Short words (old/cheap/nice etc.) → the -est:
- old → the oldest
- cheap → the cheapest
- nice → the nicest

but
- good → the best
- bad → the worst

### Words ending in -y (easy/heavy etc.) → the -iest:
- easy → the easiest
- heavy → the heaviest
- pretty → the prettiest

### Long words (careful/expensive/interesting etc.) → the most ...:
- careful → the most careful
- interesting → the most interesting

We say: the oldest ... / the most expensive ... etc. (with the):

- The church is very old. It's the oldest building in the town.
  (= it is older than all the other buildings)
- What is the longest river in the world?
- Money is important but it isn't the most important thing in life.
- Excuse me, where is the nearest bank?

You can use the oldest / the best / the most expensive etc. without a noun:

- Ken is a good player but he isn't the best in the team.
  (the best = the best player)

superlative + I've ever ... / you've ever ... etc.
- The film was very bad. I think it's the worst film I've ever seen.
- What is the most unusual thing you've ever done?
EXERCISES

89.1 Write sentences with comparatives (older etc.) and superlatives (the oldest etc.).

1. (big/small)
   (A/D) A is bigger than D.
   (A) A is the biggest.
   (B) B is the smallest.

2. (long/short)
   (C/A) C is ........................................ A.
   (D) D is ........................................
   (B) B ........................................

3. (young/old)
   (D/C) D ........................................
   (B) ........................................
   (C) ........................................

4. (expensive/cheap)
   (D/A) ........................................
   (C) ........................................
   (A) ........................................

5. (good/bad)
   (A/C) ........................................
   (A) ........................................
   (D) ........................................

89.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (the oldest etc.).

1. This building is very old. It's ............... in the town.
2. It was a very happy day. It was ............... of my life.
3. It's a very good film. It's ............... I've ever seen.
4. She's a very popular singer. She's ............... in the country.
5. It was a very bad mistake. It was ............... I've ever made.
6. It's a very pretty village. It's ............... I've ever seen.
7. It was a very cold day. It was ............... of the year.
8. He's a very boring person. He's ............... I've ever met.

89.3 Write sentences with a superlative (the longest etc.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sydney</th>
<th>Brazil</th>
<th>large</th>
<th>country</th>
<th>planet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Everest</td>
<td>Jupiter</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>city</td>
<td>state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alaska</td>
<td>the Nile</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>river</td>
<td>mountain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the USA</td>
<td>the solar system</td>
<td>the world</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Sydney is the largest city in Australia.
2. Everest ........................................
3. ........................................
4. ........................................
5. ........................................
6. ........................................
enough

A

She can’t buy a sandwich. 
She hasn’t got enough money.

He can’t reach the shelf. 
He isn’t tall enough.

B

enough + noun (enough money / enough people etc.)
- ‘Is there enough sugar in your coffee?’ ‘Yes, thank you.’
- We wanted to play football but we didn’t have enough players.
- Why don’t you buy a car? You’ve got enough money. (not ‘money enough’)

enough without a noun:
- I’ve got some money but not enough to buy a car. 
  (= I need more money to buy a car)
- ‘Would you like some more to eat?’ ‘No, thanks. I’ve had enough.’
- You’re always at home. You don’t go out enough.

C

describe + enough (good enough / tall enough etc.)
- ‘Shall we sit outside?’ ‘No, it isn’t warm enough.’ (not ‘enough warm’)
- Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?
- Don’t buy that coat. It’s nice but it isn’t long enough. (= it’s too short)

Remember:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>enough + noun</th>
<th>but adjective + enough</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enough money</td>
<td>tall enough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough time</td>
<td>good enough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough people</td>
<td>old enough</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D

We say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>enough for (somebody/something)</th>
<th>- This pullover isn’t big enough for me.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- I haven’t got enough money for a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough to (do something)</td>
<td>- I haven’t got enough money to buy a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(not ‘for buy a car’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Is your English good enough to have a conversation? (not ‘for have’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough for (somebody/something) to (do something)</td>
<td>- There aren’t enough chairs for everybody to sit down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXERCISES

90.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **enough** + one of these words:

chairs   money   paint   wind

1. She hasn’t got enough **money**...
2. There aren’t
3. She hasn’t got
4. There isn’t

90.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use one of these adjectives + **enough**:

big   long   strong   tall

1. He isn’t tall enough...
2. The car
3. His legs aren’t
4. He

90.3 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** with one of these words:

big   eat   fruit   loud   old   practise   sugar   time   tired

1. ‘Is there **enough sugar** in your coffee?’ ‘Yes, thank you.’
2. Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?
3. He can leave school if he wants — he’s
4. Did you have **enough time** to answer all the questions in the exam?
5. This house isn’t **big enough** for a large family.
6. Tina is very thin. She doesn’t
7. You don’t eat **enough**. You should eat more — it’s good for you.
8. It’s late but I don’t want to go to bed now. I’m not
9. Lisa isn’t a very good tennis player because she doesn’t

90.4 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** with the words in brackets (...).

1. We haven’t got **enough money to buy** a car. (money / buy)
2. This knife isn’t **enough sharp** for tomatoes. (sharp / cut)
3. The water wasn’t **enough warm** to take a bath. (warm / have)
4. Have we got **enough bread** to make sandwiches? (bread / make)
5. We played well but not **enough well** to win the game. (well / win)
6. I don’t have **enough time** to read newspapers. (time / read)
too

A

His shoes are **too big** for him.

There is **too much** sugar in it.

B

too + adjective / adverb (**too big** / **too hard** etc.)

- Can you turn the radio down? It's **too loud**. (= louder than I want)
- I can't work. I'm **too tired**.
- I think you work too **hard**.

C

too much / too many = more than you want, more than is good:

- I don't like the weather here. There is **too much rain**. (= more rain than is good)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are **too many people** here.
- Emily studies all the time. I think she studies too **much**.
- Traffic is a problem in this town. There are too **many cars**.

D

Compare **too** and **not enough**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>too</strong></th>
<th><strong>not enough</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The hat is **too big** for him. | The hat isn't big enough for him. (= it's **too small**)
| The radio is **too loud**. Can you turn it down, please? | The radio isn't loud enough. Can you turn it up, please?
| There's **too much sugar** in my coffee. (= more sugar than I want) | There's **not enough sugar** in my coffee. (= I need more sugar)
| I don't feel very well. I ate too **much**. | You're very thin. You don't eat **enough**.

E

We say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>too ... for (somebody/something)</th>
<th>too ... to (do something)</th>
<th>too ... for (somebody/something) to (do something)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| These shoes are **too big** for me. | I'm **too tired** to go out. (= *not* for go out') | She speaks too fast for me to understand.
| It's a small house – **too small** for a large family. | It's **too cold** to sit outside. | |
EXERCISES

91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use too + one of these words:
big crowded fast heavy loud low

1. The radio is **too loud**.
2. The box is ____________________________.
3. The net is ____________________________.
4. She’s driving _________________________.
5. The ball is ____________________________.
6. The restaurant is ________________________.

91.2 Put in too / too much / too many / enough.

1. You’re always at home. You don’t go out ____________.
2. I don’t like the weather here. There’s _____________ rain.
3. I can’t wait for them. I haven’t got ________________ time.
4. There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were _______________ people.
5. You’re always tired. I think you work _______________ hard.
6. ‘Did you have _______________ to eat?’ ‘Yes, thank you.’
7. You drink _______________ coffee. It’s not good for you.
8. You don’t eat _______________ vegetables. You should eat more.
9. I don’t like the weather here. It’s _______________ cold.
10. Our team didn’t play well. We made _______________ mistakes.
11. ‘Would you like some milk in your tea?’ ‘Yes, but not _______________’.

91.3 Complete the sentences. Use too or enough with the words in brackets (...).

1. I couldn’t work. I _______________ tired.
2. Can you turn the radio up, please? It _______________ loud enough.
3. I don’t want to walk home. It’s _______________ far.
4. Don’t buy anything in that shop. It _______________ expensive.
5. You can’t put all your things in this bag. It _______________ big.
6. I couldn’t do the exercise. It _______________ difficult.
7. Your work needs to be better. It _______________ good.
8. I can’t talk to you now. I _______________ busy.
9. I thought the film was boring. It _______________ long.

91.4 Complete the sentences. Use too (+ adjective) + to (do something).

1. (I’m not going out / cold) _______________ It’s too cold to go out.
2. (I’m not going to bed / early) ____________________________
3. (they’re not getting married / young) ____________________________
4. (nobody goes out at night / dangerous) ____________________________
5. (don’t phone Ann now / late) ____________________________
6. (I didn’t say anything / surprised) ____________________________

[191]
He speaks English very well.
(word order 1)

A verb + object

Sue reads a newspaper every day.

The verb (reads) and the object (a newspaper) are usually together. We say:
- Sue reads a newspaper every day.

(not ‘Sue reads every day a newspaper.’)

verb + object

He speaks English very well. (not ‘He speaks very well English.’)
I like Italian food very much. (not ‘I like very much …’)
Did you watch television all evening? (not ‘Did you watch all evening …?’)
We invited a lot of people to the party. (not ‘We invited to the party …’)
Paul often wears a black hat. (not ‘Paul wears often …’)
I opened the door quietly.

Why do you always make the same mistake?
I’m going to borrow some money from the bank.

B place and time

We went to a party last night.

Place (to a party) is usually before time (last night). We say:
- We went to a party last night. (not ‘We went last night to a party.’)

place (where?)

Liz walks to work every day. (not ‘… every day to work’)
Will you be at home this evening? (not ‘… this evening at home?’)
I usually go to bed early. (not ‘… early to bed’)
We arrived at the airport at 7 o’clock.
They’ve lived in the same house for 20 years.
Jim’s father has been in hospital since June.

word order in questions ⇒ UNITS 43-45 always/usually/often etc. ⇒ UNIT 93
92.1 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.
1. Did you watch all evening television?
2. Sue reads a newspaper every day.
3. I like very much this picture.
4. Tom started last week his new job.
5. I want to speak English fluently.
6. Jane bought for her friend a present.
7. I drink every day three cups of coffee.
8. Don’t eat your dinner too quickly!
9. I borrowed from my brother fifty pounds.

92.2 Put the words in order.
1. (the door / opened / I / quietly)
2. (two letters / I / this morning / wrote)
3. (passed / Paul / easily / the exam)
4. (Ann / very well / French / doesn’t speak)
5. (a lot of work / did / I / yesterday)
6. (London / do you know / well?)
7. (we / enjoyed / very much / the party)
8. (the problem / carefully / I / explained)
9. (we / at the airport / some friends / met)
10. (did you buy / in England / that jacket?)
11. (every day / do / the same thing / we)
12. (football / don’t like / very much / I)

92.3 Put the words in order.
1. (to work / every day / walks / Liz)
2. (at the hotel / I / early / arrived)
3. (goes / every year / to Italy / Julia)
4. (we / since 1988 / here / have lived)
5. (in London / Sue / in 1960 / was born)
6. (didn’t go / yesterday / Paul / to work)
7. (to the bank / yesterday afternoon / went / Ann)
8. (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)
9. (in October / Barbara / to university / is going)
10. (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the garden / saw)
11. (many times / have been / my parents / to the United States)
12. (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant)
13. (to the cinema / tomorrow evening / are you going?)
14. (the children / I / took / this morning / to school)
always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)

A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>always</th>
<th>often</th>
<th>ever</th>
<th>rarely</th>
<th>also</th>
<th>already</th>
<th>all</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>usually</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>never</td>
<td>seldom</td>
<td>just</td>
<td>still</td>
<td>both</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These words (always/never etc.) are often with the verb in the middle of a sentence:
- My brother never speaks to me.
- She’s always late.
- Do you often go to restaurants?
- I sometimes eat too much. (or Sometimes I eat too much.)
- I don’t want to go to the cinema. I’ve already seen the film.
- I’ve got three sisters. They’re all married.

B
always/never etc. go before the verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>always</th>
<th>often</th>
<th>never</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>feel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| I always go to work by car. (not ‘I go always’)
| Ann often plays tennis. (not ‘Ann plays often tennis’)
| You sometimes look unhappy.
| They usually have dinner at 7 o’clock.
| We rarely (or seldom) watch television.
| Richard is a good footballer. He also plays tennis and volleyball. (not ‘He plays also tennis’)
| I’ve got three sisters. They all live in London.

but always/never etc. go after am/is/are/was/were:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>are</th>
<th>was</th>
<th>were</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>always</td>
<td>often</td>
<td>never</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| I am never ill. (not ‘I never am ill’)
| They are usually at home in the evenings.
| It is often very cold here in winter.
| When I was a child, I was always late for school.
| ‘Where’s Linda?’ ‘She’s still in bed.’
| I’ve got two brothers. They’re both doctors.

C
always/never etc. go between two verbs (have ... been / can ... find etc.):

| verb 1 | verb 2 | I will always remember you.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>can</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- It doesn’t often rain here.
- Do you usually go to work by car?
- I can never find my keys.
- Have you ever been to Rome?
- A: Where’s Linda?
  B: She’s just gone out. (she’s = she has)
- A: Where are your friends?
  B: They’ve all gone to the cinema.
EXERCISES

93.1 Look at Paul’s answers to the questions and write sentences with often/never etc.

1. Do you ever play tennis?  Yes, often.
2. Do you get up early? Yes, always.
3. Are you ever late for work? No, never.
5. Do you ever go swimming? Yes, often.
6. Are you at home in the evenings? Yes, usually.

Paul often plays tennis.
He ...
He ...
He ...

93.2 Write these sentences with the words in brackets (...).

1. My brother speaks to me. (never) My brother never speaks to me.
2. Susan is polite. (always) Susan ...
3. I finish work at 5 o’clock. (usually) I ...
4. Jill has started a new job. (just) Jill ...
5. I go to bed before midnight. (rarely) ...
6. The bus isn’t late. (usually) ...
7. I don’t eat fish. (often) ...
8. I will forget what you said. (never) ...
9. Have you lost your passport? (ever) ...
10. Do you work in the same place? (still) ...
11. They stay in the same hotel. (always) ...
12. Diane doesn’t work on Saturdays. (usually) ...
13. Is Tina here? (already) ...
14. What do you have for breakfast? (usually) ...
15. I can remember his name. (never) ...

93.3 Write sentences with also. Use the words in brackets (...).

1. Do you play football? (tennis) Yes, and I also play tennis.
2. Do you speak Italian? (French) Yes, and I ...
3. Are you tired? (hungry) Yes, and ...
4. Have you been to England? (Ireland) Yes, ...
5. Did you buy any clothes? (some books) Yes, ...

93.4 Write sentences with both and all.

1. They both live in London.
   They football.
   students.
   cars.

2. They married.
   They England.
A  still

An hour ago it was raining.

It is still raining now.

**still** = something is the same as before:
- I had a lot to eat but I’m still hungry. (= I was hungry before and I’m hungry now)
- ‘Did you sell your car?’ ‘No, I’ve still got it.’
- ‘Do you still live in Barcelona?’ ‘No, I live in Madrid now.’

B  yet

Twenty minutes ago they were waiting for Bill.

They are still waiting for Bill.

**yet** = until now:

We use **yet** in **negative** sentences (He hasn’t come yet.) and in **questions** (Has he come yet?).

**Yet** is usually at the end of a sentence:
- A: Where’s Diane?
  B: She isn’t here yet. (= she will be here but until now she hasn’t come)
- A: What are you doing this evening?
  B: I don’t know yet. (= I will know later but I don’t know at the moment)
- A: Are you ready to go yet?
  B: Not yet. Wait a moment. (= I will be ready but I’m not ready at the moment)
- A: Have you finished with the newspaper yet?
  B: No, I’m still reading it.

Compare **yet** and **still**:
- She hasn’t gone yet. = She’s still here. (*not* ‘She is yet here’)
- I haven’t finished eating yet. = I’m still eating.

C  already

**already** = earlier than expected:
- ‘What time is John arriving?’ ‘He’s already here.’ (= earlier than we expected)
- ‘I’m going to tell you what happened.’ ‘That’s not necessary. I already know.’
- Ann doesn’t want to go to the cinema. She has already seen the film.
94.1 You meet Lisa. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with still.

**LISA – TWO YEARS AGO**

1. I play the piano.
2. I live in Clare Street.
3. I’m a student.
4. I’ve got a motor-bike.
5. I go to the cinema a lot.
6. I want to be a teacher.

---

**94.2 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.**

1. They were waiting for the bus.
   - (before) They were waiting.
   - (still) They are still waiting.
   - (yet) The bus hasn’t come yet.

2. He was looking for a job.
   - (before) He was looking for a job.
   - (still) He is still looking for a job.
   - (yet) He hasn’t found a job yet.

3. She was doing her homework.
   - (before) She was doing her homework.
   - (still) She is still doing her homework.
   - (yet) She hasn’t finished her homework yet.

4. They were eating dinner.
   - (before) They were eating dinner.
   - (still) They are still eating dinner.
   - (yet) They haven’t had dinner yet.

---

**94.3 Write questions with yet.**

1. You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Perhaps she is ready now. You ask her: **Are you ready yet?**
2. You are waiting for Ann to arrive. She wasn’t here ten minutes ago. Perhaps she is here now. You ask somebody: **Has Ann come yet?**
3. Mary did an exam and is waiting for the results. Perhaps she has her results now. You ask her: **Has Mary got her results yet?**
4. A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn’t sure where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now. You ask him: **Has Tom decided where to go on holiday yet?**

---

**94.4 Complete the sentences. Use already.**

1. What time is John arriving? **He’s already here.**
2. Does Ann want to see the film? **No, she has already seen it.**
3. I must see Julia before she goes. **It’s too late. She hasn’t seen Julia yet.**
4. Do you need a pen? **No thanks. I haven’t used a pen one.**
5. Shall I pay the bill? **No, it’s OK. I haven’t paid the bill.**
6. Shall I tell Paul about the meeting? **No, he hasn’t heard anything. I told him.**
Give me that book!  Give it to me!

A  give  lend  pass  send  show

After these verbs (give/lend etc.), there are two possible structures:

(give) something to somebody:
- I gave the keys to Liz.

(give) somebody something:
- I gave Liz the keys.

B  (give) something to somebody

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>That's my book. Give something to somebody</th>
<th>somebody</th>
<th>something</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>These are Sue's keys. Can you give it to me.</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>that book. It's mine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you give them to me?</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>some flowers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I lent these flowers to her.</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>some money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you send my car to her?</td>
<td>your mother?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We've seen these photos. You showed them to her?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C  (give) somebody something

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compare:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I gave the keys to Liz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I gave Liz the keys. (but not 'I gave to Liz the keys.')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That's my book. Can you give it to me?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you give me that book? (but not 'give to me that book')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We prefer the first structure (give something to somebody) when the thing is it or them:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I gave it to her. (not 'I gave her it')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Here are the keys. Give them to your father. (not 'Give your father them')</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXERCISES

95.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want. He gave them to different people.

Write sentences beginning **He gave** ....

1. What did Mark do with the armchair?
2. What did he do with the tennis racket?
3. What happened to the books?
4. What about the lamp?
5. What did he do with the pictures?
6. And the ladder?

He gave it to his brother.

He gave ..........................................................

He ..............................................................

He ..............................................................

He ..............................................................

He ..............................................................

He ..............................................................


95.2 You wanted to give presents to your friends. You decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.

1. I gave Paul a book...
2. I gave ..........................................................
3. I ..............................................................
4. ..............................................................
5. ..............................................................
6. ..............................................................

95.3 Write questions beginning **Can you** give me ...? / Can you pass me ...? etc.

1. (you want the salt) (pass)
2. (you need an umbrella) (lend)
3. (you want my address) (give)
4. (you need ten pounds) (lend)
5. (you want some information) (send)
6. (you want to see the letter) (show)
7. (you want some stamps) (get)

Can you pass me the salt?

Can you ...................................................... your

Can you ......................................................

Can you ......................................................

Can you ......................................................

Can you ......................................................


95.4 Which is right?

1. I gave Liz the keys. / I gave Liz the keys. I gave Liz the keys is right.
2. I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
3. Did you send the letter me? / Did you send the letter to me?
4. I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
5. Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
6. This is Ann's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
7. I showed to the policeman my identity card. / I showed the policeman my identity card.
at 8 o’clock   on Monday   in April

A  

| at | 8 o’clock  
|    | 10.30  
|    | midnight etc.  

| on | Sunday(s) / Monday(s) etc.  
|    | 25 April / 6 June etc.  
|    | New Year’s Day etc.  

| in | April/June etc.  
|    | 1985/1750 etc.  
|    | summer/spring etc.  

- I start work at 8 o’clock.
- The shops close at 5.30.
- Goodbye! See you on Friday.
- I don’t work on Sundays.
- The concert is on 22 November.
- I’m going on holiday in October.
- Emma left school in 1993.
- The garden is lovely in spring.

B  

We say:

- at the weekend
- at night
- at Christmas / at Easter
- at the end of ...
- at the moment

- Are you going away at the weekend?
- I can’t sleep at night.
- Where will you be at Christmas? (but on Christmas Day)
- I’m going on holiday at the end of October.
- Are you busy at the moment?

C  

in the morning / in the afternoon / in the evening
- I always feel good in the morning.
- Do you often go out in the evening?

but

- on Monday morning / on Tuesday afternoon / on Friday evening / on Saturday night etc.
- I’m meeting Jill on Monday morning.
- Are you doing anything on Saturday evening?

D  

We do not use at/on/in before:

- this ... (this morning / this week etc.)
- last ... (last August / last week etc.)
- next ... (next Monday / next week etc.)
- every ... (every day / every week etc.)

- Are you going out this evening?
- The garden was lovely last summer.
- I’m going on holiday next Monday.
  (not ‘on next Monday’)

E  

in five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years etc.

- Hurry! The train leaves in five minutes.
  (= it leaves five minutes from now)
- Goodbye! I’ll see you in a few days.
  (= a few days from now)
EXERCISES

96.1 Write at/on/in.

1. on 6 June 7. 24 September 13. Friday morning
2. in the evening 8. Thursday 14. Saturday night
3. half past two 9. 11.45 15. night
4. Wednesday 10. Christmas Day 16. the end of the day
5. 1987 11. Christmas 17. the weekend
6. September 12. the morning 18. winter

96.2 Write at/on/in.

1. Goodbye! See you on Friday.
2. Where were you on 28 February?
3. I got up at 8 o'clock this morning.
4. I like getting up early in the morning.
5. My sister got married in May.
7. Did you go out on Tuesday?
8. Did you go out on Tuesday evening?
9. Do you often go out on the evening?
10. Let's meet at 7.30 tomorrow evening.
11. I often go away on the weekend.
12. I'm starting my new job on 3 July.
13. We often go to the beach in summer.
14. George isn't here in the moment.
15. Julia's birthday is in January.
16. Do you work on Saturdays?
17. The company started in 1969.
18. I like to look at the stars in night.
19. I'll send you the money at the end of the month.

96.3 Look at Lisa's diary for next week and complete the sentences.

1. Lisa is going to the cinema on Wednesday evening.
2. She has to phone Chris on Thursday.
3. She isn't doing anything special next week.
4. She's got a driving lesson on Tuesday.
5. She's going to a party on Saturday.
6. She's meeting Sam on Sunday.

96.4 Write sentences with in ...

1. It's 17.25 now. The train leaves at 17.30.
2. It's Monday today. I'll phone you on Thursday.
3. Today is 14 June. My exam is on 28 June.
4. It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30.

96.5 Write at/on/in if necessary. Sometimes there is no preposition.

1. I'm leaving on Friday.
2. I'm leaving next Friday. (no preposition)
3. I always feel tired the evening.
4. Will you be at home this evening?
5. We went to France last summer.
6. Laura was born in 1975.
7. What are you doing the weekend?
8. I phone Robert every Sunday.
9. Shall we play tennis next Sunday?
10. I can't go to the party Sunday.
11. I'm going out. I'll be back an hour.
12. I don't often go out night.
from ... to ... 

- We lived in Canada from 1982 to 1990.
- I work from Monday to Friday.

You can also say from ... until ...
- We lived in Canada from 1982 until 1990.

until + the end of a period

- They’re going away tomorrow. They’ll be away until Friday.
- I went to bed early but I wasn’t tired. I read a book until 3 o’clock.
- Wait here until I come back.

You can also say till (= until):
- Wait here till I come back.

Compare:
- ‘How long will you be away?’ ‘Until Monday.’
- ‘When are you coming back?’ ‘On Monday.’

since + a time in the past (to now)

- Mr and Mrs Kelly have been married since 1968. (from 1968 to now)
- It has been raining since I arrived.

We use since after the present perfect (have been / have done etc.):
- John is in hospital. He has been in hospital since Monday. (= from Monday to now)
- We use for (not since) + a period of time (three days / ten years etc.):
- John has been in hospital for three days. (not ‘since three days’)

for + a period of time

- George stayed with us for three days.
- I’m going away for a few weeks.
- I’m going away for the weekend.
- They’ve been married for ten years.
EXERCISES

97.1 Read the information about these people and complete the sentences. Use from ... to/until/since.

ALEX

I live in England now.
I lived in Canada before.
I came to England in 1990.

ALICE

I live in Switzerland now.
I lived in France before.
I came to Switzerland in 1991.

CAROL

I work in a restaurant now.
I worked in a hotel before.
I started work in the restaurant in 1993.

GERRY

I'm a salesman now.
I was a teacher before.
I started work as a salesman in 1989.

2 (Alex / Canada / → 1990) Alex lived in Canada 1990.
3 (Alex / England / 1990 →) Alex has lived in England
4 (Alice / France / → 1991) Alice lived in
5 (Alice / Switzerland / 1991 →) Alice has lived in
6 (Carol / a hotel / 1990 -1993) Carol worked 1990...
7 (Carol / a restaurant / 1993 →) Carol has worked
8 (Gerry / a teacher / 1983 - 1989) Gerry was a
9 (Gerry / a salesman / 1989 →) Gerry has been

Now write sentences with for.

10 (Alex / Canada) Alex lived in Canada for eight years.
11 (Alex / England) Alex has lived in England
12 (Alice / Switzerland) Alice has
13 (Carol / a hotel) Carol worked
14 (Carol / a restaurant) Carol
15 (Gerry / a teacher) Gerry
16 (Gerry / a salesman) Gerry

97.2 Put in until/since/for.

1 Mr and Mrs Kelly have been married since 1968.
2 I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed 10 o’clock.
3 We waited for Sue half an hour but she didn’t come.
4 ‘Have you just arrived?’ ‘No, I’ve been here half past seven.’
5 ‘How long did you stay at the party last night?’ ‘midnight.’
6 David and I are good friends. We have known each other ten years.
7 I’m tired. I’m going to lie down a few minutes.
8 Don’t open the door of the train the train stops.
9 This is my house. I’ve lived here I was seven years old.
10 Jack has gone away. He’ll be away Wednesday.
11 Next week I’m going to Paris three days.
12 I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I work six.
13 ‘How long have you known Ann?’ ‘we were at school together.’
14 Where have you been? I’ve been waiting for you twenty minutes.
before  after  during  while

- Everybody is nervous before exams.
- I went to sleep during the film.
- We were tired after our visit to the museum.

- Don’t forget to close the window before you go out.
- I often go to sleep while I’m watching television.
- They went home after they did the shopping.

during, while and for

We use during + noun (during the film). We use while + verb (while I’m watching):
- We didn’t speak during the meal.
- We didn’t speak while we were eating. (not ‘during we were eating’)

Use for (not ‘during’) + a period of time (three days / two hours / a year etc.):
- We played tennis for two hours. (not ‘during two hours’)
- I lived in London for a year. (not ‘during a year’)

You can use before/after + -ing (before going / after eating etc.):
- I always have breakfast before going to work. (= before I go to work)
- After doing the shopping, they went home. (= after they did)

Do not say ‘before to go’, ‘after to do’ etc.:
- Before eating the apple, I washed it carefully. (not ‘before to eat’)
- I started work after reading the newspaper. (not ‘after to read’)

past continuous (I was -ing) ⇒ UNIT 13-14  for ⇒ UNIT 97  prepositions + -ing ⇒ UNIT 105
before/after/while/when ⇒ UNIT 110
## EXERCISES

### 98.1
Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>before</th>
<th>during</th>
<th>after</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the concert</th>
<th>the exam</th>
<th>they went to Australia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the course</td>
<td>the lunch</td>
<td>you are waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the end</td>
<td>the night</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Everybody was nervous **before the exam**.
2. I usually work four hours in the morning, and another two hours **during**.
3. The film was very boring. We left **after**.
4. Ann went to evening classes to learn German. She learnt a lot **after**.
5. My aunt and uncle lived in London **while**.
6. A: Somebody broke a window **while** Did you hear anything?  
   B: No. I was asleep all the time.  
7. Would you like to sit down **during**?
8. ‘Are you going home **during**? ’ ‘No, we’re going to a restaurant.’

### 98.2
Put in **during/while/for**.

1. We didn’t speak **while** we were eating.
2. We didn’t speak **during** the meal.
3. George phoned **while** you were out.
4. I stayed in Rome **while** five days.
5. Sally wrote a lot of letters **during** she was on holiday.
6. The students looked very bored **after** the lesson.
7. I fell out of bed **while** I was asleep.
8. Yesterday evening I watched TV **for** three hours.
9. I don’t usually watch TV **while** the day.
10. Do you ever watch TV **while** you are having dinner?

### 98.3
Complete the sentences. Use **-ing (doing etc.)**.

1. After **doing** the shopping, they went home.
2. I felt sick after **eating** too much chocolate.
3. I’m going to ask you a question. Think carefully before **asking** it.
4. I felt awful when I got up this morning. I felt better after **taking** a shower.
5. After **finishing** my work, I left the office and went home.
6. Before **going** to a foreign country, it’s a good idea to learn a few words of the language.

### 98.4
Write sentences with **before + -ing and after + -ing**.

1. They did the shopping. Then they went home.  
   After **doing the shopping**, they went home.
2. John left school. Then he worked in a bookshop for two years.  
   John worked **after**.
3. I read a few pages of my book. Then I went to sleep.  
   Before **reading**.
4. We walked for three hours. We were very tired.  
   After **walking**.
5. Let’s have a cup of coffee. Then we’ll go out.  
   Let’s **after**.
in at on (places 1)

A in

- in a room
- in a shop
- in a car
- in the water
- in a garden
- in a town
- in the city centre
- in France

- 'Where's David?'  'In the kitchen. / In the garden. / In London.'
- What's in that box / in that bag / in that cupboard?
- Angela works in a shop / in a bank / in a factory.
- I had a swim in the river / in the sea.
- Milan is in the north of Italy.
- I live in a town but I want to live in the country.

B at

- at the bus stop
- at the door
- at the traffic lights
- at her desk
- at the top (of the page)
- at the bottom (of the page)

- There's somebody at the bus stop / at the door.
- The car is waiting at the traffic lights.
- Julia is working at her desk.

- at the top / at the bottom / at the end (of...):
  - Write your name at the top of the page.
  - My house is at the end of the street.

C on

- on a shelf
- on a plate
- on a balcony
- on the floor etc.
- on a wall
- on a door
- on the ceiling etc.

- There are some books on the shelf and some pictures on the wall.
- There are a lot of apples on those trees.
- Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.
- There is a stamp on the envelope.

also on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motor-bike:
- Who is that man on the motor-bike?
99.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on + the words in brackets (...).

1. Where is he? **In the kitchen.**
2. Where are the shoes? **In the box.**
3. Where is the pen? **In the box.**
4. Where is the clock? **On the wall.**
5. Where is the bus? **At the bus stop.**
6. Where are the horses? **In the field.**
7. Where are they standing? **On the balcony.**
8. Where is she swimming? **In the pool.**
9. Where is he standing? **On the table.**
10. Where is the spider? **In the ceiling.**
11. Where is he sitting? **At the table.**
12. Where is she sitting? **On the table.**

99.2 Put in in/at/on.

1. Don’t sit **on** the grass. It’s wet.
2. What have you got **in** your bag?
3. Look! There’s a man **on** the roof. What’s he doing?
4. There are a lot of fish **in** this river.
5. Our house is number 45 – the number is **on** the door.
6. ‘Is the cinema near here?’ ‘Yes, turn left **at** the traffic lights.’
7. I usually do my shopping **in** the city centre.
8. My sister lives **in** Brussels.
9. There’s a small park **on** the top of the hill.
10. I think I heard the doorbell. There’s somebody **at** the door.
11. Munich is a large city **in** the south of Germany.
12. There are a few shops **at** the end of the street.
13. It’s difficult to carry a lot of things **on** a bicycle.
14. I looked at the list of names. My name was **at** the bottom of the list.
15. There is a mirror **on** the wall **in** the living room.
in

**in bed**
- 'Where's Kate?' ‘She's in bed.'

**in hospital / in prison**
- David's father is ill. He's in hospital.

**in a street**
- I live in a small street near the station.

**in the sky**
- I like to look at the stars in the sky at night.

**in the world**
- What's the largest city in the world?

**in a newspaper / in a book**
- I read about the accident in the newspaper.

**in a photograph / in a picture**
- You look sad in this photograph.

**in a car / in a taxi**
- Did you come here in your car?

**in the middle (of ...)**
- There's a big tree in the middle of the garden.

at

**at home**
- Will you be at home this evening?

**at work / at school**
- 'Where's Kate?' ‘She's at work.'

**at university / at college**
- Helen is studying law at university.

**at the station / at the airport**
- Do you want me to meet you at the station?

**at Jane's (house) / at my sister's (house) / at the doctor's / at the hairdresser's etc.**
- 'Where were you yesterday?' ‘At my sister's.’

**at a concert / at a party / at a football match etc.**
- There weren't many people at the party.

Often it is possible to use in or at for buildings (hotels, restaurants etc.):
- We stayed at a nice hotel. or We stayed in a nice hotel.

on

**on a bus**
- Did you come here on the bus?

**on the first floor**
- The office is on the first floor. (not 'in the first floor')

**on the way (to ...) / on the way home**
- I met Ann on the way to work / on the way home.
Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use **in/at/on** + the words in brackets (...).

1. Where is she? **in** hospital.
2. Where are they? ........................................................................
3. Where is he? ........................................................................
4. Where are they? ........................................................................
5. Where are the stars? ........................................................................
6. Where are they? ........................................................................

7. Where is Brian? ........................................................................
8. Where is the restaurant? ........................................................................
9. Where is she? ........................................................................
10. Where are they? ........................................................................
11. Where are they? ........................................................................
12. Where are they? ........................................................................

---

Put in **in/at/on**.

1. Helen is studying law **at** university.
2. There was a big table **in** the middle of the room.
3. What is the longest river **in** the world?
4. Were there many people **at** the concert last night?
5. Will you be **at** home tomorrow afternoon?
6. Who is that man **in** this photograph? Do you know him?
7. Where are your children? Are they **at** school?
8. George is coming by train. I’m going to meet him **at** the station.
9. Charlie is **in** hospital. He’s going to have an operation tomorrow.
10. How many pages are there **in** this book?
11. ‘Are you hungry after your journey?’ ‘No, I had a meal **on** the train.’
12. I’m sorry I’m late. My car broke down **on** the way here.
13. ‘Is Tom here?’ ‘No, he’s **in** his brother’s.’
14. Don’t believe everything you see **in** the newspaper!
15. I walked to work but I came home **on** the bus.
### A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to</th>
<th>in/at (⇒ Units 99–100)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go/come/return/walk (etc.) to ...</td>
<td>be/stay/do something (etc.) in ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ We’re going to London next week.</td>
<td>❑ Piccadilly Circus is in London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ I want to go to Italy.</td>
<td>❑ My brother lives in Italy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ We walked from my house to the city centre.</td>
<td>❑ The main shops are in the city centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ What time do you go to bed?</td>
<td>❑ I like reading in bed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>home</th>
<th>be/stay/do something (etc.) at home:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go/come/walk (etc.) home (without ‘to’):</td>
<td>❑ I’m staying at home this evening.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ I’m tired. I’m going home. (not ‘to home’)</td>
<td>❑ ‘Where’s Ann?’ ‘At home.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Did you walk home?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### C

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>arrive and get</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arrive in a country or town (arrive in Italy / arrive in Paris etc.):</td>
<td>❑ They arrived in England last week. (not ‘arrived to England’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ What time did you arrive at the station? (not ‘arrive to the station’)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrive at other places (arrive at the station / arrive at work etc.):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ What time did you arrive at the hotel? (not ‘arrive to the hotel’)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get to (a place):</td>
<td>❑ What time did you get to the hotel?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ What time did you get to Paris?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get home / arrive home (no preposition):</td>
<td>❑ I was tired when I got home. or I was tired when I arrived home.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**EXERCISES**

101.1 Write to or in.

1 I like reading in bed.
2 We're going to Italy next month.
3 Sue is on holiday in Italy at the moment.
4 I must go to the bank today.
5 I was tired, so I stayed in bed late.
6 What time do you usually go to bed?
7 Does this bus go to the centre?
8 Would you like to live in another country?

101.2 Write to or at if necessary. Sometimes there is no preposition.

1 Paula didn't go to work yesterday.
2 I'm tired. I'm going to home. (*no preposition*)
3 Ann is not very well. She has gone to the doctor.
4 Would you like to come to a party on Saturday?
5 "Is Liz at home?" 'No, she's gone to work.'
6 There were 20,000 people at the football match.
7 Why did you go home early last night?
8 A boy jumped into the river and swam to the other side.
9 There were a lot of people waiting at the bus stop.
10 We had a good meal at a restaurant and then we went back to the hotel.

101.3 Write to, at or in if necessary. Sometimes there is no preposition.

1 I'm not going out this afternoon. I'm staying at home.
2 We're going to a concert tomorrow evening.
3 I went to New York last year.
4 How long did you stay at New York?
5 Next year we hope to go to Canada to visit some friends.
6 Shall we go to the cinema this evening?
7 Is there a restaurant at the station?
8 After the accident three people were taken to hospital.
9 How often do you go to the dentist?
10 'Is Diane here?' 'No, she's at Ann's.'
11 My house is at the end of the street on the left.
12 I went to Mary's house but she wasn't at home.
13 There were no taxis, so we had to walk home.
14 'What did you study at university?' 'I didn't go to university.'

101.4 Write to, at or in if necessary. Sometimes there is no preposition.

1 What time do you usually get to work?
2 What time do you usually get home?
3 What time did you arrive at the party?
4 When did you arrive at London?
5 What time does the train get to Paris?
6 We arrived to home very late.

101.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Use to/in/at.

1 At three o'clock this morning I was in bed.
2 Yesterday I went to the cinema.
3 At ten o'clock yesterday morning I was in bed.
4 One day I'd like to go to Paris.
5 I don't like going to the cinema.
6 At 9 o'clock yesterday evening I was at home.
under behind opposite etc.
(prepositions)

A next to (or beside) / between / in front of / behind

A is next to B. or A is beside B.
B is between A and C.
D is in front of B.
E is behind B.

also
A is on the left.
C is on the right.
B is in the middle (of the group).

B opposite / in front of

A is sitting in front of B.
A is sitting opposite C.
C is sitting opposite A.

C by (= next to / beside)

- Our house is by the sea. (= beside the sea)
- Who is that man by the window?
- 'Is there a public phone here?' 'Yes, by the door.'

D under

- The cat is under the table.
- The girl is standing under a tree.
- I'm wearing a jacket under my coat.

E above and below

A is above the line.
(= higher than the line)

B is below the line.
(= lower than the line)

The pictures are above the shelves.
The shelves are below the pictures.
**EXERCISES**

### 102.1
Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.

A = Alan  B = Barbara  C = Colin  
D = Donna  E = Emma  F = Frank

Colin is standing **behind** Frank.
Frank is sitting **behind** Emma.
Emma is sitting **behind** Barbara.
Emma is sitting **between** Donna and Frank.
Donna is sitting **behind** Emma.
Frank is sitting **behind** Colin.
Alan is standing **behind** Donna.
Alan is standing **left**.
Barbara is standing **middle**.

### 102.2
Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. The cat is **under** the table.
2. There is a big tree **in front of** the house.
3. The plane is flying **above** the clouds.
4. She is standing **in front of** the piano.
5. The cinema is **to the right**.
6. She’s sitting **between** the window.
7. The switch is **in the window**.
8. The cupboard is **in the sink**.
9. There are some shoes **on the bed**.
10. The plant is **on the piano**.
11. Paul is sitting **in front of** Fiona.
12. In Britain we drive **on the left**.

### 102.3
Write sentences about the picture. Use the words in brackets (...).

1. The bank is next to the bookshop.  
2. (in front of)  
3. (opposite)  
4. (next to)  
5. (above)  
6. (between)
up  over  through etc. (prepositions)

- Jane is going to France next week.
- We walked from the hotel to the station.
- A lot of English words come from Latin.

- We jumped into the water.
- A man came out of the house and got into a car.
- Why are you looking out of the window?
- I took the old batteries out of the window.

We say put something in ... (not usually 'into'):
- I put the new batteries in the radio.

- Don’t put your feet on the table.
- Please take your feet off the table.
- I’m going to hang some pictures on the wall.
- Be careful! Don’t fall off your bicycle.
- We got on the bus in Princes Street.

- We walked up the hill to the house.
- Be careful! Don’t fall down the stairs.

- The plane flew over the mountains.
- I jumped over the wall into the garden.
- Some people say it is unlucky to walk under a ladder.

- A bird flew into the room through a window.
- The old road goes through the village.
- The new road goes round the village.
- The bus stop is just round the corner.
- I walked round the town and took some photographs.

You can also use around (= round):
- We walked around the town.

- I was walking along the road with my dog.
- Let’s go for a walk along the river.
- The dog swam across the river.

- They walked past me without speaking.
- A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?
  B: Go along this road, past the cinema, under the bridge and the hospital is on the left.

get in/on etc. ⇒ UNIT 55  in/on ⇒ UNITS 99-100  to ⇒ UNIT 101  fall off / run away etc. ⇒ UNIT 107
**EXERCISES**

103.1 Somebody asks you the way to a place. You say which way to go. Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning **Go ...**

![Image with pictures and sentences]

1. Go past the church.
2. Go to the bridge.
3. Go to the hill.
4. Go to the steps.
5. Go to this street.

103.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition.

1. The dog swam **across** the river.
2. A book fell **from** the shelf.
3. A plane flew **to** the village.
4. A woman got **into** the car.
5. A girl ran **along** the road.
6. Suddenly a car came **to** the corner.
7. They drove **to** the village.
8. They got **to** the train.
9. The Moon travels **around** the Earth.
10. They got **through** the house **a** window.

103.3 Put in a preposition (**over/from/into** etc.).

1. I looked **through** the window and watched the people in the street.
2. My house is very near here. It's just **in** the corner.
3. Do you know how to put a film **into** this camera?
4. How far is it **from** here **to** the airport?
5. We walked **round** the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.
6. You can put your coat **on** the back of the chair.
7. In tennis, you have to hit the ball **over** the net.
8. Silvia took a key **from** her bag and opened the door.
### A

- **on holiday**  
  - Jane isn't at work this week. She's on holiday.

- **on television**  
  - We watched the news on television.

- **on the radio**  
  - We listened to the news on the radio.

- **on the phone**  
  - I spoke to Carol on the phone last night.

- **on fire**  
  - The house is on fire! Call the fire brigade.

- **on time** (≠ not late)  
  - ‘Was the train late?’ ‘No, it was on time.’

### B

- **at (the age of) 21 / at 50 kilometres an hour / at 100 degrees etc.:**
  - Lisa got married at 21. (or ... at the age of 21.)
  - The car was travelling at 50 kilometres an hour when the accident happened.
  - Water boils at 100 degrees celsius.

### C

- **by car / by bus / by plane (or by air) / by bike etc.:**
  - Do you like travelling by train?
  - Jane usually goes to work by bike.

- **but on foot:**
  - She goes to work on foot. (= she walks)

- **a book by ... / a painting by ... / a piece of music by ... etc.:**
  - Have you read any books by Charles Dickens?
  - Who is that painting by? Picasso?

- **by after the passive (⇒ Unit 21):**
  - I was bitten by a dog.

### D

- **with/without:**
  - Did you stay at a hotel or with friends?
  - Wait for me. Please don’t go without me.
  - Do you like your coffee with or without milk?
  - I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.

- **a man with a beard / a woman with glasses etc.:**
  - Do you know that man with the beard?
  - I’d like to have a house with a big garden.

### E

- **talk/speak/think/hear/know about ... :**
  - Some people talk about their work all the time.
  - I don’t know much about cars.

- **a book / a question / a programme (etc.) about ... :**
  - Did you see the programme about computers on TV last night?
104.1 Complete the sentences. Use on + one of these:

holiday the phone the radio television time

1. We listened to the news ____________ the radio.
2. Please don’t be late. Try to be here ____________.
3. I won’t be here next week. I’m going ____________.
4. ‘Did you see Linda?’ ‘No, but I talked to her ____________.’
5. ‘What’s ____________ this evening?’ ‘There’s a film at 9 o’clock.’

104.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition (at/by etc.).

1. I cut the paper ____________ a pair of scissors.
2. She usually goes to work ____________ car.
3. Who is the woman ____________ short hair?
4. They are talking ____________ the weather.
5. The car is ____________ fire.
6. She’s listening to some music ____________ Mozart.
7. The plane is flying ____________ 600 miles an hour.
8. They’re ____________ holiday.
9. Do you know the man ____________ sunglasses?

104.3 Complete the sentences with a preposition (at/by/with etc.).

1. In tennis, you hit the ball ____________ a racket.
2. It’s cold today. Don’t go out ____________ a coat.
3. *Hamlet, Othello and Macbeth* are plays ____________ William Shakespeare.
4. Do you know anything ____________ computers?
5. My grandmother died ____________ the age of 98.
6. How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles ____________ plane?
7. I didn’t go to the football match, but I watched it ____________ television.
8. My house is the one ____________ the red door on the right.
9. These trains are very fast. They can travel ____________ very high speeds.
10. I don’t use my car very often. I prefer to go ____________ bike.
11. Can you give me some information ____________ hotels in this town?
12. I was arrested ____________ two policemen and taken to the police station.
13. The buses here are very good. They’re nearly always ____________ time.
14. What would you like to drink ____________ your meal?
15. We travelled from Paris to Moscow ____________ train.
16. One of the most famous paintings in the world is the *Mona Lisa* ____________ Leonardo da Vinci.
afraid of ... good at ... etc.
preposition + -ing (good at -ing etc.)

A  afraid of ... / good at ... etc. (adjective + preposition)

- Are you afraid of dogs?
- Why are you angry with me? What have I done?
- Are you angry about last night? (= something that happened last night)
- Ann is very different from her sister.
- I'm fed up with my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job)
- The room was full of people.
- Are you good at maths?
- Tina is very bad at writing letters.
- I'm not interested in sport.
- Sue is married to a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
- It was kind of you to help us. Thank you very much.
- David is very friendly. He's always very nice to me.
- I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm sorry about that.
- I'm sorry for not phoning you yesterday. (or I'm sorry I didn't phone you)

B  preposition + -ing

After a preposition (at/with/for etc.), a verb ends in -ing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm not very good at</td>
<td>telling</td>
<td>stories</td>
<td>I'm not very good at telling stories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>the same thing</td>
<td>Are you with doing the same thing every day?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mark is thinking of</td>
<td>buying</td>
<td>a new car</td>
<td>Mark is thinking of buying a new car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tom left</td>
<td>saying</td>
<td>goodbye</td>
<td>Tom left without saying goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>the shopping</td>
<td>After doing the shopping, they went home.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
105.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (of/in etc.).

1. He's afraid of dogs.
2. She's interested in science.
3. She's married to a footballer.
4. She's very good at languages.
5. He's fed up with the weather.
6. 'Can I help you?' ‘Oh, that's very kind of you.'

105.2 Put in the right preposition (of/in/with etc.).

1. I'm not interested in sport.
2. I'm not very good at sport.
3. I like Sarah. She's always very kind to me.
4. I'm sorry about your broken window. It was an accident.
5. He's very brave. He isn't afraid of anything.
6. It was very nice of Julia to let us stay in her flat.
7. Life today is very different from life 50 years ago.
8. Are you interested in politics?
9. Some people are afraid of spiders.
10. Chris was angry about what happened.
11. These boxes are very heavy. They are full of books.
12. I'm sorry about getting angry with you yesterday.

105.3 Complete the sentences.

1. I'm not very good at telling stories. (good / tell)
2. I wanted to go to the cinema but Paula wasn't interested in going. (interested / go)
3. Sue isn't very fed up with getting up in the morning. (good / get)
4. Let's go! I'm interested in going. (fed up / wait)
5. I'm fed up with staying up in the middle of the night. (sorry / wake)

105.4 Complete the sentences. Use without -ing.

1. (Tom left / he didn't say goodbye)
2. (Sue walked past me / she didn't speak)
3. (Don't do anything / ask me first)
4. (I went out / I didn't lock the door)

105.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use the words in brackets (...).

1. (interested) I'm interested in sport.
2. (afraid) I'm afraid of spiders.
3. (not very good) I'm not very good at telling stories.
4. (not interested) I'm not interested in going.
5. (fed up) I'm fed up with staying up in the middle of the night.
listen to ... look at ... etc.
(verb + preposition)

A

ask (somebody) for ...
belong to ...
happen to ...
listen to ...
speak/talk to somebody about something
talk to somebody about something
thank somebody for ...
think about ... or think of ...
wait for ...
write to somebody
but (tele)phone somebody (no preposition)

• A man stopped me and asked me for money.
• Does this book belong to you? (= Is this your book?)
• I can’t find my pen. What’s happened to it?
• Listen to this music. It’s beautiful.
• Did you talk to Paul about the problem?
• (on the phone) Can I speak to Chris, please?
• Thank you very much for your help.
• He never thinks about (or of) other people.
• Mark is thinking of (or about) buying a new car.
• Don’t go yet. Wait for me.
• I never get letters. Nobody writes to me.
• I must phone my parents. (not ‘phone to my parents’)

B

look at / look for / look after

look at ...
• She’s looking at her watch.
• Look at these flowers! They’re beautiful.
• Why are you looking at me like that?

look for ...
(= try to find)
• He’s lost his key. He’s looking for it.
• I’m looking for Sarah. Have you seen her?

look after ...
(= take care of, keep safe)
• When Barbara is at work, a friend of hers looks after her children.
• Don’t lose this book. Look after it. (= Keep it safe.)

C

depend

We say depend on ...

• A: Do you like eating in restaurants?
  B: Sometimes. It depends on the restaurant. (not ‘it depends of’)

You can say it depends what/where/how (etc.) with or without on:

• A: Do you want to come out with us?
  B: It depends where you’re going, or It depends on where ...

For word order (It depends where you’re going...), see Unit 48.
EXERCISES

106.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (to/for etc.).

1 She's looking at her watch.
2 He's listening to the radio.
3 They're waiting for a taxi.
4 Paul is talking to Jane.
5 They're looking at a picture.
6 Sue is looking for Tom.

106.2 Complete the sentences with a preposition (to/for/about etc.) if necessary.

1 Thank you very much for your help.
2 This is not my umbrella. It belongs to a friend of mine.
3 (on the phone) Can I speak to Mr Davis, please?
4 (on the phone) Thank you for phoning. Goodbye.
5 What happened about Mary last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
6 We're thinking about going to Australia next year.
7 We asked the waiter for coffee but he brought us tea.
8 'Do you like reading books?' 'It depends about the book.'
9 John was talking but nobody was listening about what he was saying.
10 We waited for Karen until 2 o'clock but she didn't come.
11 'Are you writing a letter?' 'Yes, I'm writing about Diane.'
12 Don't forget to phone about your mother this evening.
13 He's alone all day. He never talks to anybody.
14 'How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?' 'It depends about the type of room.'
15 Catherine is thinking about changing her job.

106.3 Complete these sentences. Use at/for/after.

1 I looked after the newspaper but I didn't read it carefully.
2 When you are ill, you need somebody to look after you.
3 Excuse me, I'm looking for Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
4 Goodbye! Have a nice holiday and look after yourself.
5 I'm going to take a photograph of you. Please look at the camera and smile.
6 Barry is looking for a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

106.4 Answer these questions with It depends …

1 Do you want to go out with us?
   It depends where you're going.
2 Do you like eating in restaurants?
   It depends on the restaurant.
3 Do you enjoy watching TV?
4 Can you do something for me?
5 Are you going away this weekend?
6 Can you lend me some money?

[221]
A **phrasal verb** is a verb (go/look/be etc.) + in/out/up/down etc.

### in

- Ann opened the door of the car and **got in**. (= into the car)
- I waited outside the house. I didn’t **go in**.

### out

- The car stopped and a woman **got out**. (= out of the car)
- I went to the window and **looked out**.

### on

- The bus arrived and I **got on**.

### off

- Be careful! Don’t **fall off**.

### up

- He **stood up** and left the room.
- I usually **get up** early. (= get out of bed)
- We **looked up** at the stars.

### down

- Would you like to **sit down**?
- The picture **fell down**.
- Lie **down** on the floor.

### away or off

- The thief **ran away**. (or … **ran off**)
- Ann got into the car and **drove away**. (or … **drove off**)

### be/go away (= in/to another place)

- Ann has **gone away** for a few days.

### back

- We went out for dinner and then **went back** to our hotel.
- Go away and don’t **come back**!

### be back:

- Ann is away. She’ll **be back** on Monday.

### over

- The wall wasn’t very high, so we **climbed over**.
- **Turn over** and look at the next page.
07.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the verbs in the list + in/out/up etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Picture</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>look</td>
<td>1 I went to the window and looked out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>open</td>
<td>2 The door was open, so we went in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>3 He heard a plane, so he turned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>bike</td>
<td>4 She got on her bike and rode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>hello</td>
<td>5 I said hello and he sat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>stop</td>
<td>6 The bus stopped and she sat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>seat</td>
<td>7 There was a free seat, so she sat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>car</td>
<td>8 A car stopped and two men got out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

07.2 Complete the sentences. Use out/away/back etc.

1. ‘What happened to the picture on the wall?’ ‘It fell down.’
2. Please don’t go out! Stay here with me.
3. She heard a noise behind her, so she looked out.
4. I’m going away now to do some shopping. I’ll be back at 5 o’clock.
5. I’m feeling very tired. I’m going to lie down on the sofa.
6. When you have read this page, turn over and read the other side.
7. Jim is from Canada. He lives in London now but he wants to go back to Canada.
8. We haven’t got a key to the house, so we can’t get in.
9. I was very tired this morning. I couldn’t get up.
10. Ann is going on holiday next month. She’s going out on the 5th and coming back on the 24th.

07.3 Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box + on/off/up etc. If necessary, put the verb into the correct form. All these phrasal verbs (wake up etc.) are in Appendix 6.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>1 I went to sleep at 10 o’clock and woke up at eight o’clock the next morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>2 ‘It’s time to go.’ ‘Hold on a minute. I’m not ready yet.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>3 The train slowly and finally stopped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slow</td>
<td>4 I like flying but I’m always nervous when the plane falls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>5 How was your exam? How did you slow down?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry</td>
<td>6 It’s difficult to hear you. Can you speak up a little?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>7 This car isn’t very good. It has broken down many times.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>8 When babies try to walk, they sometimes fall over.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>9 I told him to stop but he didn’t. Perhaps he didn’t hear me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>10 I tried to find a job but I didn’t. It was impossible.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sometimes a phrasal verb (put on / take off etc.) has an object. For example:

**verb**     **object**
put on      your coat

You can say:
- put on your coat
- or put your coat on
- take off your shoes
- or take your shoes off

*but it/them (pronouns) always go before on/off etc.:
- put it on (not ‘put on it’)
- take them off (not ‘take off them’)*

- It was cold, so I put on my coat. (or I put my coat on)
- Here’s your coat. Put it on.
- I’m going to take off my shoes. (or take my shoes off)
- Your shoes are dirty. Take them off.

**B** Some more phrasal verbs + object:

**turn on / turn off** (lights, machines, taps etc.):
- It was dark, so I turned on the light. (or I turned the light on)
- I don’t want to watch this programme. You can turn it off.

*also switch on / switch off* (lights, machines etc.):
- I switched on the light and switched off the television.

**pick up / put down**:
- Those are my keys on the floor. Can you pick them up for me?
- I stopped reading and put my book down. (or put down my book)

**bring back / take back / give back / put back**:
- You can take my umbrella but please bring it back.
- I took my new sweater back to the shop. It was too small for me.
- I’ve got Diane’s keys. I must give them back to her.
- I read the letter and then put it back in the envelope.
EXERCISES

108.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?

1 He turned on the light. (OR turned the light on)
2 She
3 He
4 She
5 He
6 She

108.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I turned on the radio.</th>
<th>I turned the radio on.</th>
<th>I turned it on.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>He put on his jacket.</td>
<td>He took her glasses off.</td>
<td>He</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>She</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Put down your pens.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>They gave back the money.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>I turned the lights off.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

108.3 Complete the sentences. Use one of the verbs in the list + it/them.

bring pick switch take turn (+ on/off/up/back)

1 I wanted to watch something on television, so I turned it on.
2 I bought a lamp but it doesn’t work. I’m going to turn it on to the shop.
3 There were some gloves on the floor, so I put them on the table.
4 When I finished working on the computer, I turned it off.
5 Thank you for lending me these books. I won’t forget to turn it on.

108.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes. All these verbs are in Appendix 7.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>your cigarette</th>
<th>a glass</th>
<th>a pair of shoes</th>
<th>ten houses</th>
<th>or me / it / them</th>
<th>in</th>
<th>up</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>away</th>
<th>out</th>
<th>down</th>
<th>over</th>
<th>round</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 They knocked ten houses down (OR down ten houses) when they built the new road.
2 That music is very loud. Can you turn it down?
3 I knocked and broke it.
4 If you want to know what a word means, you can look in a dictionary.
5 I want to keep these magazines. Please don’t throw away.
6 Somebody gave me a form and told me to fill it in.
7 I tried in the shop but I didn’t buy them.
8 I visited the school. One of the teachers showed me.
9 ‘Do you play the piano?’ ‘No, I started to learn but I gave up after a month.’
10 You’re not allowed to smoke here. Please put your cigarette in a glass.
and but or so because

We use these words (conjunctions) to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

sentence A: The car stopped.
sentence B: The driver got out.

The car stopped and the driver got out.

and/but/or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sentence A</th>
<th>sentence B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We stayed at home and (we)* watched television.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My sister is married and (she)* lives in London.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He doesn't like her and she doesn't like him.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I bought a newspaper but I didn't read it.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's a nice house but it hasn't got a garden.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Do you want to go out or are you too tired? | * It is not necessary to repeat 'we' and 'she'.

Study these sentences. We use and between the last two things:
- I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair and fell asleep.
- Alin is at work, Sue has gone shopping and Chris is playing football.

so (the result of something)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sentence A</th>
<th>sentence B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It was very hot, so I opened the window.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The water wasn't clean, so we didn't go swimming.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They like films, so they often go to the cinema.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

because (the reason for something)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sentence A</th>
<th>sentence B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I opened the window because it was very hot.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We didn't go swimming because the water wasn't clean.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lisa is hungry because she didn't have breakfast.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Because is also possible at the beginning:
- Because the water wasn't clean, we didn't go swimming.

In these examples there is more than one conjunction:
- It was late and I was tired, so I went to bed.
- I always enjoy visiting London, but I wouldn't like to live there because it's too big.
**EXERCISES**

**09.1** Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use **and/but/or**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I stayed at home.</th>
<th>I didn't have your number.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I bought a newspaper.</td>
<td>Shall I wait here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I went to the window.</td>
<td>I didn't read it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wanted to phone you.</td>
<td>I went by bus this morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I jumped into the river.</td>
<td>I watched television.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I usually drive to work.</td>
<td>I swam to the other side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want me to come with you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I stayed at home and watched television.
2. I bought a newspaper but I didn't read it.
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 
7. 

**09.2** Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **and/but/so/because**.

1. It was very hot, **so** he opened the window.
2. They didn't play tennis. 
3. They went to the museum. 
4. Bill wasn't hungry, 
5. Ann was late. 
6. Sue said. 

**09.3** Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use **and/but** etc.

1. (and) In the evening I stayed at home and studied.
2. (because) I went to bed very early because I was tired.
3. (but) 
4. (and) 
5. (so) 
6. (because)
When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>part A</th>
<th>part B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>when I went out</td>
<td>it was raining</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can begin with part A or part B:

- | When I went out, it was raining. |
  - | It was raining when I went out. |

We write a comma (,) if part A (When ...) is before part B:

- | When you're tired, don't drive. |
  - | Don't drive when you're tired. |
- | Ann was very happy when she passed her exam. |
  - | When Ann passed her exam, she was very happy. |

We do the same in sentences with before/while/after:

- | Always look both ways before you cross the road. |
  - | Before you cross the road, always look both ways. |
- | While I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain. |
  - | It began to rain while I was waiting for the bus. |
- | He never played football again after he broke his leg. |
  - | After he broke his leg, he never played football again. |

When I am ... / When I go ... etc.

Next week Jill is going to New York. She has a friend, Barbara, who lives in New York but Barbara is also going away — to Mexico. So they won’t meet in New York.

Barbara will be in Mexico when Jill is in New York.

The time is future (next week) but we say:

... when Jill is in New York. (not ‘when Jill will be’)

We use the present (I am / I go etc.) with a future meaning after when:

- | When I get home this evening, I’m going to have a shower. |
  - | (not ‘When I will get home’) |
- | I can’t talk to you now. I’ll talk to you later when I have more time. |

We do the same after before/while/after/until:

- | Please close the window before you go out. (not ‘before you will go’) |
- | Julia is going to live in our flat while we are away. (not ‘while we will be’) |
- | I’ll stay here until you come back. (not ‘until you will come back’) |
EXERCISES

110.1 Make sentences beginning with when. Choose from the boxes.

When +

I went out
I'm tired
I phoned her
I go on holiday
the programme ended
I arrived at the hotel

I switched off the TV
I always go to the same place
there were no rooms
it was raining
there was no answer
I like to watch TV

1. When I went out, it was raining.

2. .................................................................

3. .................................................................

4. .................................................................

5. .................................................................

6. .................................................................

110.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

somebody broke into the house
before they came here
when they heard the news
before they crossed the road
while they were away
they didn't believe me
they went to live in New Zealand

1. They looked both ways before they crossed the road.

2. They were very surprised .................................................................

3. After they got married, .................................................................

4. The letter arrived .................................................................

5. Where did they live .................................................................

6. While they were asleep .................................................................

7. When I told them the news, .................................................................

110.3 Which is right? Choose the correct form.

1. I stay / I'll stay here until you come / you'll come back. I'll stay and you come are right.

2. I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.

3. We must do something before it's / it will be too late.

4. Julia is going away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.

5. Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.

6. We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in England again.

7. When I come / I'll come to see you tomorrow, I bring / I'll bring the photographs.

8. I'm going to Paris next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm / I'll be there.

9. 'Don't forget to give me your address.' 'OK, I give / I'll give it to you before I go / I'll go.'

110.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. Can you close the window before you go out?

2. What are you going to do when .................................................................

3. When I have more time, .................................................................

4. I'll wait for you while .................................................................

5. When I start my new job, .................................................................

6. Will you be here when .................................................................

When +

I'm tired
I phoned her
I go on holiday
the programme ended
I arrived at the hotel

I switched off the TV
I always go to the same place
there were no rooms
it was raining
there was no answer
I like to watch TV

1. When I went out, it was raining.

2. .................................................................

3. .................................................................

4. .................................................................

5. .................................................................

6. .................................................................

110.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

somebody broke into the house
before they came here
when they heard the news
before they crossed the road
while they were away
they didn't believe me
they went to live in New Zealand

1. They looked both ways before they crossed the road.

2. They were very surprised .................................................................

3. After they got married, .................................................................

4. The letter arrived .................................................................

5. Where did they live .................................................................

6. While they were asleep .................................................................

7. When I told them the news, .................................................................

110.3 Which is right? Choose the correct form.

1. I stay / I'll stay here until you come / you'll come back. I'll stay and you come are right.

2. I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.

3. We must do something before it's / it will be too late.

4. Julia is going away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.

5. Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.

6. We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in England again.

7. When I come / I'll come to see you tomorrow, I bring / I'll bring the photographs.

8. I'm going to Paris next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm / I'll be there.

9. 'Don't forget to give me your address.' 'OK, I give / I'll give it to you before I go / I'll go.'

110.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. Can you close the window before you go out?

2. What are you going to do when .................................................................

3. When I have more time, .................................................................

4. I'll wait for you while .................................................................

5. When I start my new job, .................................................................

6. Will you be here when .................................................................

When +

I'm tired
I phoned her
I go on holiday
the programme ended
I arrived at the hotel

I switched off the TV
I always go to the same place
there were no rooms
it was raining
there was no answer
I like to watch TV

1. When I went out, it was raining.

2. .................................................................

3. .................................................................

4. .................................................................

5. .................................................................

6. .................................................................
If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle:

If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.
If you don’t hurry, you’ll miss the train.
If you’re hungry, have something to eat.
If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

... if ... (if in the middle)

It will be cheaper if we go by bus.
You’ll miss the train if you don’t hurry.
I’m going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
Do you mind if I use your phone? (= Is it OK if I use it?)

In conversation, we often use the if-part of the sentence alone:

- ‘Are you going to the concert?’ ‘Yes, if I can get a ticket.’

If you see Ann tomorrow ... etc.

After if, we use the present (not ‘will’). We say: if you see ... (not ‘if you will see’):

- If you see Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to phone me?
- If I’m late this evening, don’t wait for me. (not ‘if I will be’)
- What shall we do if it rains? (not ‘if it will rain’)
- If I don’t feel well tomorrow, I’ll stay at home.

If and when

If I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I’m not sure:
- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Perhaps. If I go out, I’ll close the window.

When I go out = I’m going out (for sure):
- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Yes, I am. When I go out, I’ll close the window.

- When I get home this evening, I’m going to have a shower.
- If I’m late this evening, don’t wait for me. (not ‘When I’m late’)
- We’re going to play tennis if it doesn’t rain. (not ‘when it doesn’t rain’)
EXERCISES

11.1 Make sentences beginning with if. Choose from the boxes.

If +

- you don't hurry
- you pass the exam
- you fail the exam
- you don't want this magazine
- you want those pictures
- you're busy now
- you're hungry
- you need money

we can have lunch now
you can have them
I can lend you some
you'll get a certificate
you'll be late
I'll throw it away
we can talk later
you can do it again

1. If you don't hurry, you'll be late.

2. If you pass

3. If

4. 

5. 

6. 

7. 

8. 

11.2 Which is right?

1. If I'm / I'll be late this evening, don't wait for me. I'm is right

2. Will you write to me if I give / I'll give you my address?

3. If there is / will be a fire, the alarm will ring.

4. If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I phone / I'll phone you in the evening.

5. I'm / I'll be surprised if Martin and Julia get / will get married.

6. Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

11.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.

2. If you don't hurry you'll miss the train.

3. I don't want to go swimming if

4. If you go to bed early tonight,

5. Turn the television off if

6. Tina won't pass her exams if

7. If I have time tomorrow,

8. We can go to the beach tomorrow if

11.4 Put in if or when.

1. If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me.

2. I'm going to do some shopping now. I come back, we can have lunch.

3. I'm thinking of going to see Tim. I go, will you come with me?

4. you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay at home.

5. Do you mind I close the window?

6. John is still at school. he leaves school, he wants to go to university.

7. Shall we have a picnic tomorrow the weather is good?

8. We're going to Madrid next week. We haven't got anywhere to stay -- we hope to find a hotel we arrive. I don't know what we'll do we don't find anywhere.
A

Dan likes fast cars but he doesn’t have one. He doesn’t have enough money.

If he **had** the money, he **would buy** a fast car.

Usually **had** is past, but in this sentence **had** is not past. If he **had** the money = if he had the money now (but he doesn’t have it).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IF</th>
<th>I: had/knew/lived/went (etc.) ...</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>would (n’t): buy ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>didn’t have/know/go (etc.) ...</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>be ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>was/were ...</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>have ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they etc.</td>
<td>could ...</td>
<td>they etc.</td>
<td>go ... etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can say:
- If he **had** the money, he would buy a car. (**If** ... *at the beginning*)
  or He would buy a car **if he had** the money. (**If** ... *in the middle*)

I’d / she’d / they’d etc. = I **would** / she **would** / they **would** etc.:
- I don’t know the answer. If I **knew** the answer, I’d **tell** you.
- It’s raining, so we’re not going out. We’d **get** wet **if we went** out.
- Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She wouldn’t be happy **if she lived** in the country.
- If you **didn’t have** a job, what **would** you **do**? (but you have a job)
- I’m sorry I can’t help you. I’d **help** you **if I could**. (but I can’t)
- If we **had** a car, we could **travel** more. (but we haven’t got a car, so we can’t travel much)

B

If (I) **was/were** ...

You can say: if (I/he/she/it) **was** or **were** ...

- It’s cold. If I **were** you, I’d **put** your coat on.
  (or if I **was** you ...)
- It’s not a very nice place. I wouldn’t **go** there
  if I **was** you. (or ... if I **were** you)
- It would be nice if the weather were (or **was**) better.

C

Compare:

**If I have / if it is** etc.
- I must go and see Ann.
  **If I have time, I will go** today.
  (= perhaps I’ll have time, so perhaps I’ll go)
- I like that jacket.
  I’ll **buy** it if it **isn’t** too expensive.
  (= perhaps it will not be too expensive)
- I’ll **help** you if I **can**. (= perhaps I can help)

**If I had / if it was** etc.
- I must go and see Ann.
  **If I had time, I would go** today.
  (= I don’t have time today so I will not go)
- I like that jacket but it’s very expensive.
  I’d **buy** it if it **wasn’t** so expensive.
  (= it is expensive, so I’m not going to buy it)
- I’d **help** you if I **could** but I can’t.
EXERCISES

UNIT 112

12.1 Complete the sentences.
1. I don’t know the answer. If I knew the answer, I’d tell you.
2. I have a car. I couldn’t travel very much if I didn’t have a car.
3. I don’t want to go out. If I didn’t have to go out, I’d go.
4. We haven’t got a key. If we had a key, we could get into the house.
5. I’m not hungry. I would have something to eat if I were hungry.
6. Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn’t do it if she didn’t like it.
7. You can’t drive. If you could drive, I would lend you my car.
8. He speaks too fast. I could understand him better if he spoke more slowly.
9. I have a lot to do today. If I didn’t have so much to do, we could go out.

12.2 Put the verb in the correct form.
1. If he had the money, he would buy a fast car. (he/have)
2. Jane likes living in a city. She wouldn’t be happy if she lived in the country. (she/not/be)
3. If I wanted to learn Italian, I’d go to Italy. (I/go)
4. I haven’t told Ann what happened. She’d be angry if she knew. (she/know)
5. If she had a map, I could show you where I live. (we/have)
6. What would you do if you won a lot of money? (you/win)
7. It’s not a very good hotel. Would you stay there if you were you? (I/not/stay)
8. If you went nearer London, we would go there more often. (we/live)
9. It’s a pity you have to go now. It would be nice if you had more time. (it/be)
10. I’m not going to take the job. I’d take it if the salary were better. (the salary/be)
11. I don’t know anything about cars. If the car broke down, what would you do? (I/not/know)
12. If you could change one thing in the world, what would you change? (you/change)

12.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb in the correct form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>we (have) a bigger house</th>
<th>I (watch) it every day (be) the same</th>
<th>it (be) a bit cheaper</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we (buy) a bigger house</td>
<td>we (have) some pictures on the wall</td>
<td>I (be) bored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we (have) a bigger house</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I’d buy that jacket if it was a bit cheaper.
2. If there was a good film on TV tonight, I’d watch it.
3. This room would be nicer if we (have) a bigger house.
4. If there wasn’t so much traffic, life would be easier.
5. Life would be boring if we had nothing to do.
6. We could invite all our friends to stay if we (have) a bigger house.
7. If we had more money, we (buy) a bigger house.
8. If we (have) a bigger house, we (have) some pictures on the wall.

12.4 Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.
1. I’d go to the dentist if I had a toothache.
2. If I could go anywhere in the world, I would go to the moon.
3. I wouldn’t be very happy if I didn’t have a car.
4. I’d buy a house if I had the money.
5. If I saw an accident in the street, I would call the police.
6. The world would be a better place if people were kinder.
A person who ... a thing that/which ...
(relative clauses 1)

B who is for people (not things):

A thief is a person who steals things.

Do you know anybody who can play the piano?

The man who phoned didn’t give his name.

The people who work in the office are very friendly.

C that is for things or people:

An aeroplane is a machine that flies.

Emma lives in a house that is 500 years old.

The people that work in the office are very friendly.

You can use that for people, but who is more usual.

D which is for things (not people):

An aeroplane is a machine which flies. (not ‘a machine who …’)

Emma lives in a house which is 500 years old.

Do not use which for people:

- Do you remember the woman who was playing the piano at the party? (not ‘the woman which …’)
EXERCISES

UNIT 113

13.1 Choose from the boxes and write sentences: A ... is a person who ... Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A thief</th>
<th>A dentist</th>
<th>doesn't tell the truth</th>
<th>is ill in hospital</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A butcher</td>
<td>A fool</td>
<td>looks after your teeth</td>
<td>steals things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A musician</td>
<td>A genius</td>
<td>is very intelligent</td>
<td>is very stupid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A patient</td>
<td>A liar</td>
<td>plays a musical instrument</td>
<td>sells meat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A thief is a person who steals things.
2. A butcher is a person...
3. A musician...
4. ...
5. ...
6. ...
7. ...
8. ...

13.2 Make one sentence from two.

1. (A man phoned. He didn't give his name.)
   The man who phoned didn't give his name.
2. (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)
   The woman wearing a yellow dress...
3. (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.)
   Most of the students...
4. (A policeman stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.)
   The...

13.3 Put in who or which.

1. I met a woman who can speak six languages.
2. What's the name of the woman who lives next door?
3. What's the name of the river which flows through the town?
4. Where is the picture which was hanging on the wall?
5. Do you know anybody who wants to buy a car?
6. You always ask questions which are difficult to answer.
7. I have a friend who is very good at repairing cars.
8. I think everybody who went to the party enjoyed it very much.
9. Why does he always wear clothes which are too small for him?

13.4 Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

1. A thief is a person that steals things (which)
   A thief is a person who steals things...
   OK
2. An aeroplane is a machine that flies.
3. A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee.
4. Have you seen the money that was on the table?
5. I don't like people which never stop talking.
6. I know somebody that can help you.
7. I know somebody who works in that shop.
8. Correct the sentences who are wrong.
the people we met  the hotel you stayed at
(relative clauses 2)

You can say:
• The bag that he is carrying ... or The bag he is carrying ... (with or without that)
• ... the photographs that Ann took? or ... the photographs Ann took?

You do not need that/who/which when it is the object:

| subject  | verb          | object          | → the bag (that) the man was carrying
|----------|---------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------
| The man  | was carrying  | a bag           | the photographs (that) Ann took      |
| Ann      | took          | some photographs| the book (that) you wanted           |
| You      | wanted        | the book        | the people (who) we met              |
| We       | met           | some people     |                                       |

Did you find the book you wanted? (or ... the book that you wanted?)
The people we met were very nice. (or The people who we met ...)
Everything I said was true. (or Everything that I said ...)

Note that we say:
• The film we saw was very good. (not ‘The film we saw it was …’)

Sometimes there is a preposition (to/in/at etc.) after the verb:

Jill is talking to a man. → Do you know the man Jill is talking to?
We stayed at a hotel. → The hotel we stayed at was near the station.
I told you about some books. → These are the books I told you about.

Note that we say:
... the books I told you about (not ‘the books I told you about them’)

You can say: (a place) where ... :
• The hotel where we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed at ...)

You must use who/that/which when it is the subject (⇒ Unit 113):
• I met a woman who can speak six languages. (who is the subject)
• Jim was wearing a hat that was too big for him. (that is the subject)
EXERCISES

4.1 Make one sentence from two.

1 (Ann took some photographs. Have you seen them?)
   Have you seen the photographs Ann took?

2 (You gave me a pen. I've lost it.)
   I've lost the

3 (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)
   I like the

4 (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)
   Where are the

5 (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)
   I

6 (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
   How

4.2 Make one sentence from two.

1 (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)
   The bag I was carrying was very heavy.

2 (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)
   The

3 (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.)
   The shoes

4 (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.)
   The

4.3 Complete the sentences. Use the information in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I looked at a map</th>
<th>they live in a house</th>
<th>you were looking for some keys</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you stayed at a hotel</td>
<td>you spoke to some people</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was sitting on a chair</td>
<td>we were waiting for a bus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linda is dancing with a man</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 What's the name of the hotel you stayed at?

2 Who are the people?

3 Did you find the

4 The is too small for them.

5 The wasn't very clear.

6 I fell off

7 was very late.

8 Who is?

4.4 Read the situations and complete the questions. Use where.

1 John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:
   Did you like the hotel where you stayed?

2 Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:
   What's the name of the restaurant

3 Sarah lives in a village. You ask her:
   Do you like

4 Richard works in a factory. You ask him:
   How big
### Appendix 1  Active and passive

#### 1.1 Present and past:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>active</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>We <strong>make</strong> butter from milk.</td>
<td>Butter <strong>is made</strong> from milk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Somebody <strong>cleans</strong> these rooms every day.</td>
<td>These rooms <strong>are cleaned</strong> every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>People never <strong>invite</strong> me to parties.</td>
<td>I <strong>am</strong> never <strong>invited</strong> to parties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How do they <strong>make</strong> butter?</td>
<td>How is butter <strong>made</strong>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>Somebody <strong>stole</strong> my car last week.</td>
<td>My car <strong>was stolen</strong> last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Somebody <strong>stole</strong> my keys yesterday.</td>
<td>My keys <strong>were stolen</strong> yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They <strong>didn’t invite</strong> me to the party.</td>
<td>I <strong>wasn’t invited</strong> to the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When <strong>did</strong> they <strong>build</strong> these houses?</td>
<td>When <strong>were</strong> these houses <strong>built</strong>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>They <strong>are building</strong> a new airport at the moment. (≠ it isn’t finished)</td>
<td>A new airport <strong>is being built</strong> at the moment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They <strong>are building</strong> some new houses near the river.</td>
<td>Some new houses <strong>are being built</strong> near the river.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past continuous</td>
<td>When I was here a few years ago, they <strong>were building</strong> a new airport. (≠ it wasn’t finished at that time)</td>
<td>When I was here a few years ago, a new airport <strong>was being built</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>Look! They <strong>have painted</strong> the door.</td>
<td>Look! The door <strong>has been painted</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>These shirts are clean. Somebody <strong>has washed</strong> them.</td>
<td>These shirts <strong>have been washed</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Somebody <strong>has stolen</strong> my car.</td>
<td>My car <strong>has been stolen</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past perfect</td>
<td>Ann said that somebody <strong>had stolen</strong> her car.</td>
<td>Ann said that her car <strong>had been stolen</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1.2 Will / can / must / have to etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>active</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Somebody will <strong>clean</strong> the office tomorrow.</td>
<td>The office will <strong>be cleaned</strong> tomorrow.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody must <strong>clean</strong> the office.</td>
<td>The office must be <strong>cleaned</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think they’ll <strong>invite</strong> you to the party.</td>
<td>I think you’ll <strong>be invited</strong> to the party.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They can’t <strong>repair</strong> my watch.</td>
<td>My watch can’t be <strong>repaired</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You should <strong>wash</strong> this sweater by hand.</td>
<td>This sweater should be <strong>washed</strong> by hand.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are going <strong>to build</strong> a new airport.</td>
<td>A new airport is going to be <strong>built</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody has <strong>to build</strong> these clothes.</td>
<td>These clothes have <strong>to be washed</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They had <strong>to take</strong> the injured man to hospital.</td>
<td>The injured man had <strong>to be taken</strong> to hospital.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 2  List of irregular verbs (⇒ Unit 24)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* pronunciation

The following verbs can be regular (-ed) or irregular (-t):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple / past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burned or burnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamed or dreamt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple / past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learned or learnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smell</td>
<td>smelled or smelt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[240]
Appendix 3  Irregular verbs in groups

past simple / past participle are the same:

1. cost → cost  
   cut → cut  
   hit → hit  
   hurt → hurt

2. lend → lent  
   send → sent  
   spend → spent  
   build → built  
   burn → burnt  
   learn → learnt  
   smell → smelt  

3. feel → felt  
   leave → left  
   meet → met  
   dream → dreamt /dremt/*  
   mean → meant /ment/*

4. bring → brought /braɪt/*/  
   buy → bought /baɪt/*/  
   fight → fought /fata/*  
   think → thought /θæt/*  
   catch → caught /kaːt/*/  
   teach → taught /tʊt/*/  

5. sell → sold  
   tell → told  
   find → found  
   have → had  
   hear → heard  
   hold → held  
   read → read /red/*  
   say → said /sed/*  
   pay → paid  
   make → made  

   stand → stood  
   understand → understood

past simple / past participle are different:

1. break → broke /brəʊk/*  
   choose → chose /tʃuːz/*  
   speak → spoke /spəʊk/*  
   steal → stole /stəʊl/*  
   wake → woke /wʊk/*

2. drive → drove /drəʊv/*  
   ride → rode /raɪd/*  
   rise → rose /raɪz/*  
   write → wrote /raʊt/*  
   beat → beat /bɪt/*  
   bite → bit /bɪt/*  
   hide → hid /hid/*

3. eat → ate /eɪt/*  
   fall → fell /fɔːl/*  
   forget → forgot /fərˈɡɔːt/*  
   give → gave /ɡiːv/*  
   see → saw /sɔː/*  
   take → took /tɔːk/*

4. blow → blew /blɔʊ/*  
   grow → grew /ɡrəʊ/*  
   know → knew /nɔː/*  
   throw → threw /θrəʊ/*  
   fly → flew /flɔː/*  
   draw → drew /drɔː/*  
   show → showed /ʃəʊd/*

5. begin → began /bɪˈɡɪn/*  
   drink → drank /dræŋk/*  
   swim → swam /swæm/*  
   ring → rang /ræŋ/*  
   sing → sang /sæŋ/*  
   run → ran /ræn/*

6. come → came /kəʊm/*  
   become → became /bəˈkeɪm/*

* pronunciation
Appendix 4  Short forms (he’s / I’d / don’t etc.)

4.1 In spoken English we usually pronounce ‘I am’ as one word. The short form (I’m) is a way of writing this:

- I am → I’m
- it is → it’s
- they have → they’ve

I’m feeling tired this morning.
‘Do you like this jacket?’ ‘Yes, it’s very nice.’
‘Where are your friends?’ ‘They’ve gone home.’

When we write short forms, we use ‘ (an apostrophe):
I’m → I’m  he’s → he’s  you’ve → you’ve  she’ll → she’ll

4.2 We use these forms with I/he/she etc.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am → ’m</th>
<th>is → ’s</th>
<th>I’m</th>
<th>he’s</th>
<th>she’s</th>
<th>it’s</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>are → ’re</td>
<td>have → ’ve</td>
<td>we’re</td>
<td>you’re</td>
<td>they’re</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has → ’s</td>
<td>had → ’d</td>
<td>I’ve</td>
<td>he’s</td>
<td>she’s</td>
<td>it’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will → ’ll</td>
<td>would → ’d</td>
<td>we’d</td>
<td>you’d</td>
<td>they’d</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I’ve got some new shoes.
- We’ll probably go out this evening.
- It’s 10 o’clock. You’re late again.

’s = is or has:
- She’s going out this evening. (she’s going = she is going)
- She’s gone out. (she’s gone = she has gone)

’d = would or had:
- A: What would you like to eat?
  B: I’d like a salad, please. (I’d like = I would like)
- I told the police that I’d lost my passport. (I’d lost = I had lost)

Do not use ’m/’s/’d etc. at the end of a sentence (⇒ Unit 39):
- ‘Are you tired?’ ‘Yes, I am.’ (not ‘Yes, I’m.’)

4.3 We use short forms with I/you/he/she etc. but you can use short forms (especially ’s) with other words too:
- Who’s your favourite singer? (= who is)
- What’s the time? (= what is)
- There’s a big tree in the garden. (= there is)
- My sister’s working in London. (= my sister is working)
- Paul’s gone out. (= Paul has gone out)
- What colour’s your car? (= What colour is your car?)
4.4  Negative short forms (⇒ Unit 42):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isn't</th>
<th>Don't</th>
<th>Can't</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(= is not)</td>
<td>(= do not)</td>
<td>(= cannot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aren't</td>
<td>Doesn't</td>
<td>Couldn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= are not)</td>
<td>(= does not)</td>
<td>(= could not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wasn't</td>
<td>Didn't</td>
<td>Won't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= was not)</td>
<td>(= did not)</td>
<td>(= will not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weren't</td>
<td>Hasn't</td>
<td>Wouldn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= were not)</td>
<td>(= has not)</td>
<td>(= would not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hasn't</td>
<td>Haven't</td>
<td>Shouldn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= has not)</td>
<td>(= have not)</td>
<td>(= should not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haven't</td>
<td>Hadn't</td>
<td>Mustn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= have not)</td>
<td>(= had not)</td>
<td>(= must not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hadn't</td>
<td></td>
<td>Needn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= had not)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(= need not)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We went to her house but she wasn’t at home.
- ‘Where’s David?’ ‘I don’t know. I haven’t seen him.’
- You work all the time. You shouldn’t work so hard.
- I won’t be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5  ’s (apostrophe + s)

’s can mean different things:
(1) ’s = is or has (⇒ section 4.2 of this appendix)
(2) let’s = let us (⇒ Unit 52)
- The weather is nice. Let’s go out. (= Let us go out.)
(3) Ann’s camera (= her camera) / my brother’s car (= his car) / the manager’s office (= his/her office) etc. (⇒ Unit 63)

Compare:
- Ann’s camera was very expensive. (Ann’s camera = her camera)
- Ann’s a very good photographer. (Ann’s = Ann is)
- Ann’s got a new camera. (Ann’s got = Ann has got)
## Appendix 5  Spelling

### 5.1 Words + -s and -es (birds/watches etc.)

- **noun + s** (plural)  
  - bird → birds  
  - hotel → hotels

- **verb + s**  
  - he/she/it -s  
  - think → thinks  
  - live → lives  
  - remember → remembers

#### + es after -s / -sh / -ch / -x:

- bus → buses  
- dish → dishes  
- watch → watches  
- box → boxes

- **also**
  - potato → potatoes  
  - do → does  
  - go → goes

#### -f / -fe → -ves:

- shelf → shelves  
- potato → potatoes

- **but**  
  - roof → roofs

### 5.2 Words ending in -y (baby → babies / study → studied etc.)

#### -y → -ies:

- study → studies  
- story → stories  
- try → tries

- **family → families**  
- **city → cities**  
- **baby → babies**

#### -y → -ied (⇒ Unit 11):

- try → tried  
- study → studied

- **marry → marries**  
- **fly → flies**

#### -y → -ier/-iest (⇒ Units 86 and 89):

- easy → easier/easiest  
- happy → happier/happiest  
- heavy → heavier/heaviest

- **lucky → luckier/luckiest**  
- **funny → funnier/funniest**

#### -y → -ily (⇒ Unit 85):

- easy → easily  
- happy → happily

- **lucky → luckily**  
- **heavy → heavily**

- **y does not change to i if the ending is -ay/-ey/-oy/-uy:**
  - holiday → holidays  
  - enjoy → enjoys/enjoyed

- **but**  
  - say → said  
  - pay → paid  
  - buy → buys  
  - key → keys

  **(irregular verbs)**
5.3 \(-ing\)

Verbs that end in \(-e\) (make/write/drive etc.) \(-\) \(-ing\):

- make \(-\) making
- write \(-\) writing
- come \(-\) coming
- dance \(-\) dancing

Verbs that end in \(-ie\) \(-\) \(-ying\):

- lie \(-\) lying
- die \(-\) dying
- tie \(-\) tying

5.4 stop \(-\) stopped, big \(-\) bigger etc.

Vowels and consonants:

**Vowel letters:** a e i o u

**Consonant letters:** b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a **vowel + a consonant**. For example: **stop**, **big**, **get**.

Before \(-ing/-ed/-er/-est\), the consonant at the end \((-p/-g/-t\ etc.)\) is ‘doubled’ \((-pp/-gg/-tt\ etc.)\).

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V+C</th>
<th>stop</th>
<th>STOP</th>
<th>p (-) pp</th>
<th>stopping</th>
<th>stopped</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>RUN</td>
<td>n (-) nn</td>
<td>running</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>GET</td>
<td>t (-) tt</td>
<td>getting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>SWIM</td>
<td>m (-) mm</td>
<td>swimming</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>BIG</td>
<td>g (-) gg</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>biggest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot</td>
<td>HOT</td>
<td>t (-) tt</td>
<td>hotter</td>
<td>hottest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin</td>
<td>THIN</td>
<td>n (-) nn</td>
<td>thinner</td>
<td>thinnest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This does not happen

(1) if the word ends in **two consonant letters** (C + C):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C+C</th>
<th>help</th>
<th>HELP</th>
<th>helping</th>
<th>helped</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>WORK</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>worked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>FAST</td>
<td>faster</td>
<td>fastest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) if the word ends in **two vowel letters + a consonant letter** (V + V + C):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V+V+C</th>
<th>need</th>
<th>N E E D</th>
<th>needing</th>
<th>needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wait</td>
<td>WAIT</td>
<td>waiting</td>
<td>waited</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>CHEAP</td>
<td>cheaper</td>
<td>cheapest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is **not** stressed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stress</th>
<th>happen</th>
<th>HAP-pen</th>
<th>happening/happened (not ‘happenened’)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>visit</td>
<td>VIS-it</td>
<td>visiting/visited</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remember</td>
<td>re-MEM-ber</td>
<td>remembering/remembered</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

but prefer pre-FER (stress at the end) \(-\) preferring/preferred

begin be-GIN (stress at the end) \(-\) beginning

(4) if the word ends in \(-y\) or \(-w\). (At the end of words, y and w are not consonants.)

enjoy \(-\) enjoying/enjoyed
snow/snowing/snowed
few/fewer/fewest
### Appendix 6  Phrasal verbs (look out / take off etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (⇒ Unit 107).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>look out</strong> / <strong>watch out</strong></td>
<td>be careful</td>
<td>Look out! There’s a car coming!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>come on</strong></td>
<td>be quick / hurry</td>
<td>Come on! Everybody is waiting for you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hold on</strong></td>
<td>wait</td>
<td>Can you hold on a minute? (= can you wait?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>carry on</strong></td>
<td>continue</td>
<td>Don’t stop working. Carry on. (= continue working)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>get on</strong></td>
<td>manage (in a job, at school, in an exam etc.)</td>
<td>How are you getting on in your new job? (= are you doing OK?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>take off</strong></td>
<td>leave the ground (for planes)</td>
<td>The plane took off 20 minutes late but landed on time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>wake up</strong></td>
<td>stop sleeping</td>
<td>I often wake up in the middle of the night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>speak up</strong></td>
<td>speak more loudly</td>
<td>I can’t hear you. Can you speak up a bit?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hurry up</strong></td>
<td>do something more quickly</td>
<td>Hurry up! We haven’t got much time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>wash up</strong></td>
<td>wash the plates etc. after a meal</td>
<td>Do you want me to wash up? (or ... to do the washing-up?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>grow up</strong></td>
<td>become an adult</td>
<td>What does your son want to do when he grows up?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>give up</strong></td>
<td>stop trying</td>
<td>I know it’s difficult but don’t give up. (= don’t stop trying)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>slow down</strong></td>
<td>go more slowly</td>
<td>You’re driving too fast. Slow down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>break down</strong></td>
<td>stop working (for cars/machines etc.)</td>
<td>Sue was very late because her car broke down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fall over</strong></td>
<td>lose your balance</td>
<td>I fell over because my shoes were too big for me.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix 7  Phrasal verbs + object  
* (fill in a form / put out a fire etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (⇒ Unit 108).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>in</strong></td>
<td>fill in (a form) = complete (a form):</td>
<td>Can you <strong>fill in</strong> this form, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>out</strong></td>
<td>put out (a fire / a cigarette):</td>
<td>The fire brigade arrived and <strong>put the fire out</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>on</strong></td>
<td>try on (clothes) = put on clothes to see if they fit you:</td>
<td>(in a shop) This is a nice jacket. Shall I <strong>try it on</strong>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>up</strong></td>
<td>give up = stop something that you do:</td>
<td>Tom <strong>gave up</strong> smoking five years ago. (= he stopped smoking)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>down</strong></td>
<td>knock down (a building) = demolish:</td>
<td>They are going to <strong>knock down</strong> the school and build a new one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>turn down</strong></td>
<td>make more quiet (TV, radio, music etc.):</td>
<td>The music is too loud. Can you <strong>turn it down</strong>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>away</strong></td>
<td>throw away (rubbish, things you don’t want):</td>
<td>These apples are bad. Shall I <strong>throw them away</strong>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>put away</strong></td>
<td>put something in the place where you usually keep it:</td>
<td>After they finished playing, the children put <strong>their toys away</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>back</strong></td>
<td>pay somebody back (money that you borrowed):</td>
<td>Thank you for lending me the money. I’ll <strong>pay you back</strong> next week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>over</strong></td>
<td>knock over (a cup / a glass / a person etc.):</td>
<td>Be careful. Don’t <strong>knock your cup over</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>around</strong></td>
<td>show (somebody) round/around = take somebody on a tour of a place:</td>
<td>We visited a factory last week. The manager <strong>showed us round</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Additional exercises

**List of exercises:**

| 1-2 | **am/is/are** | **UNITS 1-2** |
| 3   | present continuous | **UNITS 3-4** |
| 4   | present simple | **UNITS 5-7** |
| 5-7 | present simple, **am/is/are** and **have** (got) | **UNITS 1-2, 5-7, 9** |
| 8-9 | present continuous and present simple | **UNITS 3-8** |
| 10-13 | **was/were** and past simple | **UNITS 10-12** |
| 14 | past simple and past continuous | **UNITS 11-14** |
| 15 | present and past | **UNITS 3-14** |
| 16-18 | present perfect | **UNITS 15-19** |
| 19-22 | present perfect and past simple | **UNITS 18-20** |
| 23 | present, past and present perfect | **UNITS 3-20** |
| 24-27 | passive | **UNITS 21-22** |
| 28 | future | **UNITS 26-29** |
| 29 | past, present and future | **UNITS 3-20, 26-29** |
| 30 | **-ing** and infinitive | **UNITS 50-54, 96, 105** |
| 31-32 | **a** and **the** | **UNITS 64, 66-72** |
| 33 | prepositions | **UNITS 96-101, 104** |

---

**am/is/are**

1. Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + **is/isn't/are/aren't**.

![Images of scenes with words for sentences](image-url)

**The windows**
- Ann
- Kate
- The children
- Bill
- The books
- The hotel
- The bus

**on the table**
- hungry
- asleep
- open
- full
- near the station
- a doctor
- happy

1. The windows are open...
2. Ann isn't happy...
3. Kate...
4...
5...
6...
7...
8...
2 Complete the sentences.
1. 'Are you hungry?' 'No, but I'm thirsty.'
2. 'How are your parents?' 'They're very well.'
3. 'Is Linda at home?' 'No, she's at work.'
4. 'Where are my keys?' 'In the kitchen.'
5. 'Where is Pete from?' 'American or British?'
6. 'Is it hot today?' 'The temperature is 35 degrees.'
7. 'Are you a teacher?' 'No, a student.'
8. 'What's your umbrella?' 'Green.'
9. 'Where's your car?' 'In the car park.'
10. 'Do you feel tired?' 'No, I'm fine.'
11. 'How much are these oranges?' 'Thirty pence each.'

present continuous (I'm working / are you working? etc.)

3 Use the words in brackets to write sentences.
1. A: Where are your parents?
   B: They're watching TV.
2. A: Paula is going out.
   B: Where's she going?
3. A: Where's David?
   B: He's having a bath.
4. A: What are the children doing?
   B: No, they're asleep.
5. A: Is it raining?
   B: No, not at the moment.
6. A: Where are Sue and Steve?
   B: They're coming now.
7. A: Why are you standing here?
   B: I'm waiting for somebody.

present simple (I work / she doesn't work / do you work? etc.)

4 Complete the sentences. Use the present simple.
1. Sue always arrives at work early.
2. We don't watch TV very often.
3. How often do you wash your hair?
4. I want to go to the cinema but I don't want to go.
5. I want to go out this evening?
6. Ann lives near here?
7. Sarah knows a lot of people.
8. I enjoy travelling but I don't travel very much.
9. What time do you usually get up in the morning?
10. My parents are usually at home in the evening very often.
11. Tim always finishes work at five o'clock.
12. A: What do you do?
    B: I work in a hotel.
present simple, am/is/are and have (got)

5 Read the questions and Claire’s answers. Then write sentences about Claire.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
<th>Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are you married?</td>
<td>No.</td>
<td>She isn’t married.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you live in London?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
<td>She lives in London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you a student?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you got a car?</td>
<td>No.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you go out a lot?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you got a lot of friends?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like London?</td>
<td>No.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like dancing?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you interested in sport?</td>
<td>No.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Complete the questions.

1 What’s your name? ?
   married?
   Where ?
   any children?
   How ?

   Brian. Yes, I am.
   In Barton Road. Yes, a daughter.
   She’s three.

2 ?
   your job?
   a car?
   to work by car?

   I’m 29.
   I work in a supermarket.
   No, I hate it.
   Yes, I have.
   No, I usually go by bus.

3 Who is this man? ?
   in London?

   That’s my brother.
   Michael.
   He’s a travel agent.
   No, in Manchester.

7 Make sentences from these words.

1 Sarah often / tennis
2 I / a new car
3 my shoes / dirty
4 Sonia / 32 years old
5 I / two sisters
6 we often / TV in the evening
7 Ann never / a hat
8 a bicycle / two wheels
9 these flowers / beautiful
10 Mary / German very well

Sarah often plays tennis.
I’ve got a new car.
My shoes are dirty.
Sonia

Sarah often plays tennis.
I’ve got a new car.
My shoes are dirty.
Sonia
present continuous (I’m working) and present simple (I work)

Complete the sentences.

1. Please be quiet. (I’m working)
2. Do you often go (you/often/go) to the cinema?
3. What (you/cook)?
4. Jack (play) the piano very well.
5. (I/go) now. Goodbye!
6. (it/rain)
7. (I/not/watch) TV very much.
8. Excuse me, (we/look) for the museum.
9. What’s this word? How (you/pronounce) it?

Which is right?

1. ‘Are you speaking / Do you speak English?’ ‘Yes, a little.’ Do you speak is right
2. Sometimes we’re going / we go away at weekends.
3. It’s a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
4. (You meet Ann in the street.) Hello, Ann. Where are you going / do you go?
5. How often are you going / do you go on holiday?
6. Emily is a writer. She’s writing / She writes books for children.
7. I’m never reading / I never read newspapers.
8. ‘Where are Michael and Jane?’ ‘They’re watching / They watch TV in the living room.’
9. Helen is in her office. She’s talking / She talks to somebody.
10. What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
11. John isn’t at home at the moment. He’s visiting / He visits some friends.
12. ‘Would you like some tea?’ ‘No, thank you. I’m not drinking / I don’t drink tea.’
was/were and past simple (I worked / did you work? etc.)

10 Complete the sentences. Use one word only.

1 I got up early and had a shower.
2 Tom was tired last night, so he went to bed early.
3 I found this pen on the floor. Is it yours?
4 Kate got married when she was 23.
5 Helen is learning to drive. She had her first lesson yesterday.
6 ‘I’ve got a new job.’ ‘Yes, I know. David asked me.’
7 ‘Where did you buy that book?’ ‘It was a present. Ann gave it to me.’
8 We were hungry, so we had something to eat.
9 ‘Did you enjoy the film?’ ‘Yes, I really enjoyed it. It was very good.’
10 ‘Did Mary come to your party?’ ‘No, we were invited by her, but she didn’t come.’

11 Look at the questions and Kevin’s answers.
Write sentences about Kevin when he was a child.

When you were a child …

1 Did you have a nice holiday?
2 Where did you go there?
3 Amsterdor?
4 Good?
5 Back?

12 Complete the questions.

1 Did you enjoy it. (I enjoy)
2 ‘Did you do the shopping?’ (you do) ‘No, I didn’t have time.’ (I have)
3 ‘Did you phone Alan?’ ‘No, I’m afraid I forgot.’ (I forget)
4 I like your new watch. Where did you get it? (you get)
5 I saw Lucy at the party but spoke to her. (I speak)
6 A: Yes, I went to stay with some friends of mine.
   B: Yes, it was great, thanks.
   To Amsterdam.
   Five days.
   Yes, very much.
   I have friends in Amsterdam, so I stayed with them.
   Yes, it was warm and sunny.
   Yesterday.

13 Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative or question).

1 It was a good party. I enjoyed it. (I enjoy)
2 ‘Did you do the shopping?’ (you do) ‘No, I didn’t have time.’ (I have)
3 ‘Did you phone Alan?’ ‘No, I’m afraid I forgot.’ (I forget)
4 I like your new watch. Where did you get it? (you get)
5 I saw Lucy at the party but spoke to her. (I speak)
6 A: Yes, I went to stay with some friends of mine.
   B: Yes, it was great, thanks.
   To Amsterdam.
   Five days.
   Yes, very much.
   I have friends in Amsterdam, so I stayed with them.
   Yes, it was warm and sunny.
   Yesterday.

7 Paul wasn’t well yesterday, so he didn’t go to work. (he go)
8 ‘Is Mary here?’ ‘Yes, she arrived five minutes ago.’ (she arrive)
9 Where did Robert live before he came here? (Robert live)
10 The restaurant wasn’t expensive. (the meal cost)
past simple (I worked) and past continuous (I was working)
present and past

Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms:
the present simple (I work etc.)
the past simple (I worked etc.)
the present continuous (I am working etc.)
the past continuous (I was working etc.)

1. You can turn off the television. I'm not watching (not/watch) it.
2. Last night Jenny fell (fall asleep) while she was reading (read).
3. Listen! Somebody is playing (play) the piano.
4. ‘Have you got my key?’ ‘No, I’m not going to give (give) it back to you.’
5. David is very lazy. He doesn’t like (not/like) hard work.
6. Where did your parents go (your parents/go) for their holidays last year?
7. I saw (see) Diane yesterday. She drove (drive) her new car.
8. A: Have you watched (you/watch) television very often?
   B: No, I haven’t got a television set.
9. A: What did you do (you/do) at 6 o’clock last Sunday morning?
   B: I was in bed asleep.
10. Andy isn’t at home very much. He goes (go) away a lot.
11. I’m trying (try) to find a job at the moment. It’s very difficult.
12. I’m tired this morning. I didn’t sleep (not/sleep) very well last night.

present perfect (I have done / she has been etc.)

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.

1. Goodbye, Tom!
2. Who’s that man?
3. Are you still watching the film?
4. I’m looking for my glasses.
5 MINUTES LATER

1. Is Tom at home?
2. I don’t know. I’ve never seen him before.
3. No, he’s just gone out.
4. Here they are! I think they’re here!

I was just watching (just) the film.
I have been looking (looking) for my glasses.
I have not slept (not/sleep) well last night.
5. Is this a good book?
   I don’t know. I ..................... it.

6. I’m looking for Julia. ...................... her?
   Yes, she was here a few minutes ago.

7. More coffee?
   No, thanks. I ...................... enough.

8. ...................... to Sweden?
   Yes, I went there a few years ago.

9. ...................... to the cinema.
10. Enjoy the party!

11. Paul was asleep in the armchair. He ................. up.
12. How long ................. here?
   Since 1994.

13. Do you know Norman?
   Yes, we ................. each other for a long time.

14. The weather is horrible here. It ................. all day.
Complete the sentences (1, 2 or 3 words).

1 Mark and Liz are married. They have been married for five years.
2 David has been watching TV since 5 o'clock.
3 Martin is at work. He has been at work since 8.30.
4 'Have you just arrived in London?' 'No, I've been here for five days.'
5 I've known Ann we were at school together.
6 'My brother lives in Los Angeles.' 'Really? How long have you been there?'
7 George has had the same job for 20 years.
8 Some friends of ours are staying with us at the moment. They have been here since Monday.

Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.

1 I've never ridden a horse.
2 I've been to London many times.
3 I've just (once / twice / a few times / many times)
4 I've (once / twice / a few times / many times)
5 I haven't yet.
6 I've never (once / twice / a few times / many times)
7 I've been since (once / twice / a few times / many times)
8 I've been for (once / twice / a few times / many times)

Present perfect (I have done etc.) and past simple (I did etc.)

Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).

1 A: Do you like London?
   B: I don't know. I haven't been there.
2 A: Have you seen Ann?
   B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago.
3 A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new?
   B: Yes, I bought it last week.
4 A: Are you tired this morning?
   B: Yes, I went to bed late last night.
5 A: Do you want the newspaper or can I have it?
   B: You can have it. I brought it.
6 A: Are you enjoying your new job?
   B: I really enjoy it yet. My first day is next Monday.
7 A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it?
   B: No, but it was very nice yesterday.
8 A: Was Linda at the party on Saturday?
   B: I don't think so. I saw her there.
9 A: Is your son still at school?
   B: No, he left school two years ago.
10 A: Is Sylvia married?
    B: Yes, she was married for five years.
11 A: Have you heard of George Washington?
    B: Of course. He was the first President of the United States.
20 Make sentences from the words in brackets (...). Use the present perfect or past simple.

1 A: Have you been to Scotland?
   B: Yes, I went there last year. (I / go / there / last year)

2 A: Do you like London?
   B: I don't know. I've never been there. (I / never / there)

3 A: What time is Paul going out?
   B: He has already gone. (he / already / go)

4 A: Has Catherine gone home?
   B: Yes, she has gone. (she / go / at 4 o'clock)

5 A: New York is my favourite city.
   B: Is it? How many times have you been there? (how many times / you / there?)

6 A: What are you doing this weekend?
   B: I don't know. I haven't decided yet. (I / not / decide / yet)

7 A: I can't find my address book. Have you seen it?
   B: It's there. It was on the table last night. (it / on the table / last night)

8 A: Are you hungry?
   B: No, I've just eaten. (I / just / eat)

9 A: Paula and Sue are here.
   B: Are they? What time did they arrive? (what time / they / arrive?)

21 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences.

1 A: Have you been to France?
   B: Yes, many times.
   A: When the last time?
   B: Two years ago.

2 A: Is this your car?
   B: Yes, it is.
   A: How long have you had it?
   B: It's new. I bought it yesterday.

3 A: Where do you live?
   B: In Harold Street.
   A: How long have you been there?
   B: Five years. Before that I lived in Mill Road.
   A: How long have you been in Mill Road?
   B: About three years.

4 A: What do you do?
   B: I work in a shop.
   A: How long have you been there?
   B: Nearly two years.
   A: What did you do before that?
   B: I worked as a taxi driver.
Write sentences about yourself.

1 (yesterday morning) I was late for work yesterday morning.
2 (last night) .................................................................
3 (yesterday afternoon) ...................................................
4 (... days ago) ..............................................................
5 (last week) .................................................................
6 (last year) .................................................................

present, past and present perfect

Which is right?

1 'Is Sue working?' 'No, she's on holiday.'
   A Does Sue work  B Is working Sue  C Is Sue working  D Does work Sue
2 'Where ......................................................?' 'In a village near London.'
   A lives your uncle  B does your uncle live  C your uncle lives  D does live your uncle
3 I speak Italian but ............................................................ French.
   A I speak not  B I'm not speaking  C I doesn't speak  D I don't speak
4 'Where's Tom?' ............................................................... a shower at the moment.
   A He's having  B He have  C He has  D He has had
5 Why .................................................. angry with me yesterday?
   A were you  B was you  C you were  D have you been
6 My favourite film is Cleo's Dream. ...................................................... it four times.
   A I'm seeing  B I see  C I saw  D I've seen
7 I ...................................................... out last night. I was too tired.
   A don't go  B didn't went  C didn't go  D haven't gone
8 Liz is from Edinburgh. She ............................................................... there all her life.
   A is living  B has lived  C lives  D lived
9 My friend ...................................................... for me when I arrived.
   A waited  B has waited  C was waiting  D has been waiting
10 'How long ...................................................... English?' 'Six months.'
   A do you learn  B are you learning  C you are learning  D have you been learning
11 Martin is English but he lives in France. He has been there ..................................................
   A for three years  B since three years  C three years ago  D during three years
12 'What time ......................................................?' 'About an hour ago.'
   A has Ann phoned  B Ann has phoned  C did Ann phone  D is Ann phoning
13 What ...................................................... when you saw her?
   A did Sue wear  B was Sue wearing  C has Sue worn  D was wearing Sue
14 'Can you drive?' 'No, ...................................................... a car but I want to learn.'
   A I never drove  B I'm never driving  C I've never driven  D I was never driving
15 I saw Lisa at the station when I was going to work this morning but she ...................................... me.
   A didn't see  B don't see  C hasn't seen  D didn't saw
passive

24 Complete the sentences.

These houses were built 20 years ago. Before that there was a cinema here but the building (damage) in a fire and had to (knock down).

This bridge (build) in 1925. It (use) by hundreds of people every day. At the moment the bridge (paint).

This street (call) Wilton Street. It used to (call) James Street but the name (change) a few years ago.

This is a bicycle factory. Bicycles (make) here since 1931. It's the largest bicycle factory in the country—hundreds of bicycles (produce) here every year.

25 Complete the sentences.

1 We (invite) to the party but we didn't go.
2 The museum is very popular. Every year it (visit) by thousands of people.
3 Many buildings (damage) in the storm last week.
4 A new road is going to (build) next year.
5 'Where's your jacket?' ‘It (clean). It will be ready tomorrow.'
6 She's famous now, but in a few years her name will (forget).
7 'Shall I do the washing-up?' ‘No, it (already/do).'
8 Milk should (keep) in a fridge.
9 (you/every/bite) by a snake?
10 My bag (steal) from my car yesterday afternoon.

26 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

1 Somebody has stolen my keys. My keys have been stolen.
2 Somebody stole my car last week. My car has been stolen.
3 Somebody wants you on the phone. You please.
4 Somebody has eaten the bananas. The bananas have been eaten.
5 Somebody will repair the machine. The machine will be repaired.
6 Somebody is watching us. We are being watched.
7 Somebody has to buy the food. The food has to be bought.
27 Active or passive? Complete the sentences.

1. They **are building** (build) a new airport at the moment.
2. These shirts are clean now. They **have been washed** (wash).
3. ‘How did you fall?’ ‘Somebody **push** (push) me.’
4. ‘How did you fall?’ ‘I **push** (push).’
5. I can’t find my bag. Somebody **take** (take) it!
6. My watch is broken. It **is being repaired** (repair) at the moment.
7. Who **invented** (invent) the camera?
8. When **will the camera/invent** (invent)?
9. The letter was for me, so why **are they sending** (they/send) it to you?
10. The information will **be sent** (send) to you as soon as possible.

---

28 Which is the best alternative?

1. We’re **having** (a party) next Sunday. I hope you can come.
   A. We have B. We’re having C. We’ll have

2. Do you know about Sally? **she leaves** (her job). She told me last week.
   A. She leaves B. She’s going to leave C. She’ll leave

3. There’s a programme on television that I want to watch. **starts** (in five minutes).
   A. It starts B. It’s starting C. It will start

4. The weather is nice now but I think **will rain** later.
   A. it rains B. it’s raining C. it will rain

5. ‘What **are you doing** next weekend?’ ‘Nothing special. Why?’
   A. do you do B. are you doing C. will you do

6. ‘When you see Ann, can you ask her to phone me?’ ‘OK, **call** her.’
   A. I ask B. I’m going to ask C. I’ll ask

7. ‘What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?’ **tea, please**.
   A. I have B. I’m going to have C. I’ll have

8. Don’t take that newspaper away. **read** it.
   A. I read B. I’m going to read C. I’ll read

9. Rachel is ill, so **won’t come** to the party tomorrow night.
   A. she doesn’t come B. she isn’t coming C. she won’t come

10. I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time **is her train arriving**?
    A. does her train arrive B. is her train going to arrive C. is her train arriving

11. ‘Will you be at home tomorrow evening?’ ‘No. **will go**.’
    A. I go out B. I’m going out C. I’ll go out

12. **Are you going to phone** you tomorrow?’ ‘Yes, OK.’
    A. Do I phone B. Am I going to phone C. Shall I phone
29 Complete the sentences.

1 A: Did you go (you/go) out last night?
   B: No, (I/stay) at home.
   A: What (you/do)?
   B: (I/watch) television.
   A: (you/go) out tomorrow night?
   B: Yes, (I/go) to the cinema.
   A: Which film (you/see)?
   B: (I/not/decide) yet.

2 A: Are you on holiday here?
   B: Yes, we are.
   A: How long (you/be) here?
   B: (we/arrive) yesterday.
   A: And how long (you/stay)?
   B: Until the end of next week.
   A: And (you/like) it here?
   B: (we/have) a wonderful time.

3 A: Oh, (I/just/remember) — (Jill/phone) while you were out.
   B: (she/always/phone) when I'm not here.
   (she/leave) a message?
   A: No, but (she/want) you to phone her back as soon as possible.
   B: OK, (I(phone) her now.
   (you/know) her number?
   A: It's in my address book. (I/get) it for you.

4 A: (I/go) out with Chris and Steve this evening.
   B: Yes, where (you/want) to come with us?
   A: To the Italian restaurant in North Street. (you/ever/eat) there?
   B: Yes, (I/be) there two or three times. In fact I (go) there last night but I'd love to go again!

5 A: (I/lose) my glasses again.
   (you/see) them?
   B: (you/wear) them when (I/come) in.
   A: Well, (I/not/wear) them now, so where are they?
   B: (you/look) in the kitchen?
   A: No, (I/go) and look now
-ing and infinitive

Which is correct?

1. Don’t forget to switch off the light before you go out.
   A. switch  B. to switch  C. switching

2. It’s late. I must go now.
   A. go  B. to go  C. going

3. I’m sorry but I haven’t got time to talk to you now.
   A. for talking  B. to talk  C. talking

4. Bill is always in the kitchen. He enjoys cooking.
   A. cook  B. to cook  C. cooking

5. We’ve decided to go away for a few days.
   A. go  B. to go  C. going

6. You’re making too much noise. Can you please stop shouting?
   A. shout  B. to shout  C. shouting

7. Would you like to come to dinner on Sunday?
   A. come  B. to come  C. coming

8. That bag is too heavy for you. Let me help you.
   A. help  B. to help  C. helping

9. There’s a swimming pool near my house. I go swimming every day.
   A. to swim  B. swimming  C. swim

10. Did you use a dictionary to translate the letter?
    A. to translate  B. for translating  C. for translate

11. I’d love to have a car like yours.
    A. have  B. to have  C. having

12. Could you help me with this bag, please?
    A. help  B. to help  C. helping

13. I don’t mind sitting here but I’d prefer to sit by the window.
    A. sit  B. to sit  C. sitting

14. Do you want me to help you?
    A. that I help  B. me to help  C. me helping

15. I always read the newspaper before starting work.
    A. start  B. to start  C. starting

16. I wasn’t feeling very well but the medicine made me feel better.
    A. feel  B. to feel  C. feeling

17. Shall I phone the restaurant to reserve a table?
    A. for reserve  B. for reserving  C. to reserve

18. Tom looked at me without saying anything.
    A. say  B. saying  C. to say
Complete the sentences.

1. Can you pass the sugar, please?
2. Have you got ____________?
   No, I can't drive.
3. Have you got any milk?
   Yes, there's some in ____________.
4. What do you do?
   I'm ____________.
5. I don't feel very well.
   I don't want to go to ____________.
6. What did you do last night?
   I went to ____________.
7. Shall we walk home?
   No, let's get ____________.
8. Can you play ____________?
   Yes, but not very well.
9. I'm interested in ____________.
10. What's the difference between those cars?
    Nothing, they're ____________.
32 Put in a/an or the where necessary. If a/an/the are not necessary, leave an empty space (−).

1 Who is the best player in your team?
2 I don’t watch television very often.
3 ‘Is there a bank near here?’ ‘Yes, at the end of this street.’
4 I can’t ride a horse.
5 The sky is very clear tonight.
6 Do you live here or are you a tourist?
7 What did you have for lunch?
8 Who was first President of the United States?
9 ‘What time is it?’ ‘I don’t know. I haven’t got a watch.’
10 I’m sorry but I’ve forgotten your name. I can never remember names.
11 What time is the next train to London?
12 Kate never writes letters. She prefers to phone people.
13 ‘Where’s Sue?’ ‘She’s in the garden.’
14 Excuse me, I’m looking for Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
15 Gary was ill last week, so he didn’t go to work.
16 Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
17 I usually listen to radio while I’m having breakfast.
18 I like sport. My favourite sport is basketball.
19 Julia is a doctor. Her husband is an art teacher.
20 My apartment is on the second floor. Turn left at the top of the stairs, and it’s on the right.

21 After dinner, we watched television.
22 Last year we had a wonderful holiday in the south of France.

---

33 Put in a preposition (in/or/by etc.).

1 Helen is studying at university.
2 What is the longest river in Europe?
3 Is there anything on television this evening?
4 We arrived at the hotel after midnight.
5 ‘Where’s Mike?’ ‘He’s on holiday.’
6 Tom hasn’t got up yet. He’s still in bed.
7 Linda is away. She’s been away since Monday.
8 The next meeting is on 15 April.
9 I usually go to work by car.
10 There’s too much sugar in my coffee.
11 Kevin lived in London for six months. He didn’t like it very much.
12 Were there a lot of people at the party?
13 What are you doing at the moment? Are you working?
14 I don’t know any of the people in this photograph.
15 The train was very slow. It stopped at every station.
16 I like this room. I like the pictures on the walls.
17 ‘Did you buy that picture?’ ‘No, it was given to me by a friend of mine.’
18 I’m going away for a few days. I’ll be back on Thursday.
19 Silvia has gone to Italy. She’s in Milan at the moment.
20 Ann left school at fifteen and got a job in a shop.
Key to Exercises

UNIT 1

1.1
2 they're
3 it's not / it isn't
4 that's
5 I'm not
6 you're not / you aren't

1.2
2 'm/am 6 are
3 is 7 is ... are
4 are 8 'm/am ... is

1.3
2 My brother is a teacher.
3 This house isn't / is not very big.
4 The shops aren't / are not open today.
5 My keys are in my bag.
6 Jenny is 18 years old.
7 You aren't / are not very tall.

1.4
Example answers:
1 My name is Robert.
2 I'm from Australia.
3 I'm 25.
4 I'm a computer programmer.
5 I'm married.
6 My favourite colours are black and white.
7 I'm interested in machines.

1.5
2 They're / They are cold.
3 He's / He is hot.
4 He's / He is afraid.
5 They're / They are hungry.
6 She's / She is angry

1.6
2 I'm / I am hungry. or
I'm not / I am not hungry.
3 It's / It is warm today, or
It isn't / It's not warm today.
4 I'm / I am afraid of dogs. or
I'm not / I am not afraid of dogs.

1.7
5 My hands are cold, or
My hands aren't / are not cold.
6 Canada is a very big country.
7 Diamonds aren't / are not cheap.
8 I'm / I am interested in football, or
I'm not / I am not interested in football.
9 Rome isn't / is not in Spain.

UNIT 2

2.1
2 F 6 E
3 H 7 B
4 C 8 I
5 A 9 D

2.2
3 Is your job interesting?
4 Are the shops open today?
5 Are you interested in sport?
6 Is the post office near here?
7 Are your children at school?
8 Why are you late?

2.3
2 Where is
3 How old are
4 How much are
5 What is
6 Who is
7 What colour are

2.4
2 Are you married or single?
3 Are you American?
4 How old are you?
5 Are you a teacher?
6 Is your wife a lawyer?
7 Where's / Where is she from?
8 What's / What is her name?
9 How old is she?

2.5
2 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
3 Yes, it is. or
No, it isn't. / No, it's not.

UNIT 3

3.1
2 's / is waiting
3 're / are playing
4 He's / He is lying
5 They're / They are having
6 She's / She is sitting

3.2
2 's / is cooking
3 're / are standing
4 is swimming
5 're / are staying
6 's / is having
7 're / are building
8 'm / am going

3.3
3 She's / She is sitting on the floor.
4 She's not / She isn't reading a book.
5 She's not / She isn't playing the piano.
6 She's / She is laughing.
7 She's / She is wearing a hat.
8 She's not / She isn't writing a letter.

3.4
3 I'm sitting on a chair, or
I'm not sitting on a chair.
4 I'm eating, or I'm not eating.
5 It's raining, or
It isn't raining. / It's not raining.
6 I'm learning English.
7 I'm listening to music, or
I'm not listening to music.
8 The sun is shining, or
The sun isn't shining.
9 I'm wearing shoes, or
I'm not wearing shoes.
10 I'm not reading a newspaper.
KEY TO EXERCISES

UNIT 4

4.1
2 Are you going now?
3 Is it raining?
4 Are you enjoying the film?
5 Is that clock working?
6 Are you writing a letter?
4.2
2 Where is she going?
3 What are you eating?
4 Why are you crying?
5 What are they looking at?
6 Why is he laughing?
4.3
3 Are you listening to me?
4 Where are your friends going?
5 Are your parents watching television?
6 What is Ann cooking?
7 Why are you looking at me?
8 Is the bus coming?
4.4
2 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
3 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
4 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
5 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
6 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
5.1
2 thinks 5 has
3 flies 6 finishes
4 dances
5.2
2 live 5 They go
3 She eats 6 He sleeps
4 They play
5.3
2 open 7 costs
3 closes 8 cost
4 teaches 9 boils
5 meet 10 like...likes
6 washes
5.4
2 I often play basketball.
3 Margaret usually works hard.
4 Jenny always wears nice clothes.
5.5
Example answers:
2 I usually read in bed.
3 I often get up before 7 o'clock.
4 I never go to work by bus.
5 I usually drink two cups of coffee in the morning.

UNIT 6

6.1
2 Jane doesn't play the piano very well.
3 They don't know my phone number.
4 We don't work very hard.
5 He doesn't have a bath every day.
6 You don't do the same thing every day.
6.2
2 Carol doesn't like classical music.
3 Bill and Rose don't like boxing.
4 Bill and Rose like horror films.
5 Carol doesn't like horror films.
6.3
2-5 You can use:
I never... (go/ride etc.) or I often... or I don't...very often.
6.4
2 doesn't use
3 don't go
4 doesn't wear
5 don't know
6 doesn't cost
7 don't see
6.5
3 don't know
4 doesn't talk
5 drinks
6.6
2 We always have dinner at 7.30.
3 Tim never watches television.
4 Children usually like chocolate.
5 Julia always enjoys parties.

UNIT 7

7.1
2 Do you play tennis?
3 Does Ann play tennis?
4 Do your friends live near here?
5 Does your brother speak English?
6 Do you do exercises every morning?
7 Does Paul often go away?
8 Do you want to be famous?
9 Does Linda work hard?
7.2
3 How often do you watch TV?
4 What do you want for dinner?
5 Do you like football?
6 Does your brother like football?
7 What do you do in the evenings?
8 Where does your sister work?
9 Do you often go to the cinema?
10 What does this word mean?
11 Does it often snow here?
13 How much does it cost to phone New York?
14 What do you usually have for breakfast?
15
2 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
3 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
4 Yes, it does. or No, it doesn't.
5 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
UNIT 8

8.1
2 No, she isn’t.
   Yes, she does.
   She’s playing the piano.
3 Yes, he does.
   Yes, he is.
   He’s cleaning a window.
4 No, they aren’t.
   Yes, they do.
   They teach.

8.2
2 don’t 6 do
3 are 7 does
4 does 8 doesn’t
5 ’s/is … don’t

8.3
4 is singing
5 She wants
6 do you read
7 you’re/you are sitting
8 I don’t understand
9 I’m going … Are you coming
10 does your father
11 I’m not listening
12 He’s / He is cooking
13 doesn’t usually drive … usually walks
14 doesn’t like … She prefers

UNIT 9

9.1
2 he’s got 5 it’s got
3 they’ve got 6 I haven’t got
4 she hasn’t got

9.2
2 Have you got a passport? or 
   Do you have …?
3 Has your father got a car? or 
   Does your father have …?
4 Has Carol got many friends? or 
   Does Carol have …?
5 Have you got any brothers or sisters? or 
   Do you have …?
6 How much money have we got? 
   or … do we have?
7 What kind of car has Julia got? or 
   … does Julia have?

UNIT 10

10.1
2 Carol and Jack were at/in the 
   cinema.
3 Sue was at the station.
4 Mr and Mrs Hall were in/at a 
   restaurant.
5 Ben was … on the beach / on a 
   beach / at the seaside.
6 (example answer) I was at work.

10.2
2 is … was 6 are
3 am 7 Was
4 was 8 was
5 were 9 are … were

UNIT 11

11.1
2 opened 5 happened
3 started … finished 6 rained
4 wanted 7 enjoyed … stayed
5 happened 8 died

11.2
2 saw 8 thought
3 played 9 copied
4 paid 10 knew
5 visited 11 put
6 bought 12 spoke
7 went

11.3
2 got 9 had
3 had 10 went
4 left 11 waited
5 drove 12 departed
6 arrived 13 arrived
7 parked 14 took
8 went

11.4
2 lost her keys 7 had a shower
3 met her friends 8 came (to see us)
4 bought two newspapers 6 ate an orange
5 went to the cinema 7 had a shower

10.3
2 wasn’t … was
3 was … were
4 Were … was … wasn’t
5 were
6 weren’t … were

10.4
2 Was your exam difficult?
3 Where were Ann and Chris last 
   week?
4 How much was your new 
   camera?
5 Why were you angry yesterday?
6 Was the weather nice last week?

UNIT 8

8.1
2 No, she isn’t.
   Yes, she does.
   She’s playing the piano.
3 Yes, he does.
   Yes, he is.
   He’s cleaning a window.
4 No, they aren’t.
   Yes, they do.
   They teach.

8.2
2 don’t 6 do
3 are 7 does
4 does 8 doesn’t
5 ’s/is … don’t

8.3
4 is singing
5 She wants
6 do you read
7 you’re/you are sitting
8 I don’t understand
9 I’m going … Are you coming
10 does your father
11 I’m not listening
12 He’s / He is cooking
13 doesn’t usually drive … usually walks
14 doesn’t like … She prefers

UNIT 9

9.1
2 he’s got 5 it’s got
3 they’ve got 6 I haven’t got
4 she hasn’t got

9.2
2 Have you got a passport? or 
   Do you have …?
3 Has your father got a car? or 
   Does your father have …?
4 Has Carol got many friends? or 
   Does Carol have …?
5 Have you got any brothers or sisters? or 
   Do you have …?
6 How much money have we got? 
   or … do we have?
7 What kind of car has Julia got? or 
   … does Julia have?

UNIT 10

10.1
2 Carol and Jack were at/in the 
   cinema.
3 Sue was at the station.
4 Mr and Mrs Hall were in/at a 
   restaurant.
5 Ben was … on the beach / on a 
   beach / at the seaside.
6 (example answer) I was at work.

10.2
2 is … was 6 are
3 am 7 Was
4 was 8 was
5 were 9 are … were

UNIT 11

11.1
2 opened 5 happened
3 started … finished 6 rained
4 wanted 7 enjoyed … stayed
5 happened 8 died

11.2
2 saw 8 thought
3 played 9 copied
4 paid 10 knew
5 visited 11 put
6 bought 12 spoke
7 went

11.3
2 got 9 had
3 had 10 went
4 left 11 waited
5 drove 12 departed
6 arrived 13 arrived
7 parked 14 took
8 went

11.4
2 lost her keys 7 had a shower
3 met her friends 8 came (to see us)
4 bought two newspapers 6 ate an orange
5 went to the cinema 7 had a shower

10.3
2 wasn’t … was
3 was … were
4 Were … was … wasn’t
5 were
6 weren’t … were

10.4
2 Was your exam difficult?
3 Where were Ann and Chris last 
   week?
4 How much was your new 
   camera?
5 Why were you angry yesterday?
6 Was the weather nice last week?
KEY TO EXERCISES

11.5
Example answers:
2 I got up late yesterday.
3 I met some friends at lunchtime.
4 I played tennis.
5 I wrote a letter.
6 I lost my keys.

11.6
1 I saw a colleague yesterday.
2 They saw a film last night.
3 We played a game of tennis.
4 I bought a book.
5 He played golf.
6 They read a newspaper.

11.7
1 I read a book yesterday.
2 They went to the cinema last night.
3 We played a game of tennis.
4 I bought a book.
5 He played golf.
6 They read a newspaper.

11.8
1 I read a book yesterday.
2 They went to the cinema last night.
3 We played a game of tennis.
4 I bought a book.
5 He played golf.
6 They read a newspaper.

12.1
2 didn’t work 4 didn’t have
3 didn’t go 5 didn’t do

12.2
2 Did you enjoy the party?
3 Did you have a good holiday?
4 Did you finish work early?
5 Did you sleep well last night?

12.3
2 I got up before 7 o’clock, or
I didn’t get up before 7 o’clock.
3 I had a shower, or
I didn’t have a shower.
4 I bought a magazine, or
I didn’t buy a magazine.
5 I ate meat, or
I didn’t eat meat.
6 I went to bed before 10.30, or
I didn’t go to bed before 10.30.

12.4
2 did you arrive
3 Did you win
4 did you go
5 did it cost
6 Did you go to bed late
7 Did you have a nice time
8 did it happen / did that happen

12.5
2 bought 5 opened
3 Did it rain 6 didn’t have
4 didn’t stay 7 did you do

13.1
2 Carol and Jack were at/in the
cinema. They were watching a film.
3 Tom was in his car. He was
driving.

13.2
2 she was swimming / she was
having a swim.
3 she was reading a/the
newspaper.
4 she was cooking (lunch).
5 she was having breakfast.
6 she was listening to music /...
listening to the radio.

13.3
2 What were you doing
3 Was it raining
4 Why was Ann driving so fast
5 Was Tim wearing a suit

13.4
2 He was carrying a bag.
3 He wasn’t going to the dentist.
4 He was eating an ice-cream.
5 He wasn’t carrying an umbrella.
6 He wasn’t going home.
7 He was wearing a hat.
8 He wasn’t riding a bicycle.

13.5
1 happened ... was painting ... fell
2 arrived ... got ... were waiting
3 was walking ... met ... was
going ... was carrying ... stopped

15.1
2 She has closed the door.
3 They have gone to bed.
4 It has stopped raining.
5 He has had a bath.
6 The picture has fallen down.

15.2
2 ‘ve bought / have bought
3 ‘s gone / has gone
4 Have you seen
5 has broken
6 ‘ve told / have told
7 has taken
8 has she gone
9 ‘ve forgotten / have forgotten
10 ‘s invited / has invited
11 Have you decided
12 haven’t seen

16.1
2 He’s / He has just got up.
3 They’ve / They have just
bought a car.
4 The race has just started.

16.2
2 they’ve / they have already seen
it.
3 I’ve / I have already phoned
him.
4 He’s / He has already gone
(away).
5 I’ve / I have already read it.
6 She’s / She has already started
(it).

16.3
2 The bus has just gone.
3 The bus hasn’t gone yet.
4 He hasn’t opened it yet.
5 They’ve / They have just
finished their dinner.
6 It hasn’t stopped raining yet.

16.4
2 Have you met your new
neighbours yet?
3 Have you written the letter yet?
4 Has he / Tom sold his car yet?
UNIT 17

17.1
3 Have you ever been to Australia?
4 Have you ever lost your passport?
5 Have you ever flown in a helicopter?
6 Have you ever eaten Chinese food?
7 Have you ever been to New York?
8 Have you ever driven a bus?
9 Have you ever broken your leg?

17.2
Helen:
2 Helen has never been to Australia.
3 Helen/She has eaten Chinese food a few times.
4 Helen/She has never driven a bus.

You (example answers):
5 I've / I have never been to New York.
6 I've / I have played tennis many times.
7 I've / I have never flown in a helicopter.
8 I've / I have been late for work a few times.

UNIT 18

18.1
3 have been
4 have been
5 have lived / have been living
6 has worked / has been working
7 has had
8 have been learning

18.2
2 How long have they been there / in Brazil?
3 How long have you known her?
4 How long has she been learning Italian?
5 How long has he lived in Canada? / How long has he been living ...?
6 How long have you been a teacher?
7 How long has it been raining?

18.3
2 She has lived in Wales all her life.
3 They have been on holiday since Sunday.
4 The sun has been shining all day.
5 She has been waiting for ten minutes.
6 He has had a beard since he was 20.

18.4
2 know
3 have known
4 have you been
5 works
6 has been
7 have you lived
8 I've had
9 is ... has been

UNIT 19

19.1
3 for 6 for
4 since 7 for
5 since 8 for ... since

19.2
Example answers:
2 A year ago.
3 A few days ago.
4 Two hours ago.
5 Six months ago.

19.3
3 for 20 years
4 20 years ago
5 ten minutes ago
6 an hour ago
7 for six months
8 for a long time
9 a few days ago

19.4
2 been here since Tuesday.
3 raining for an hour.
4 known Sue for two years.
5 had my/a camera since 1989.
6 been married for six months.
7 been studying medicine (at university) for three years.
8 played / been playing the piano since he was seven years old.

19.5
Example answers:
1 I've lived in... all my life.
2 I've been in the same job for ten years.
3 I've been learning English for six months.
4 I've known Chris for a long time.
5 I've had a headache since I got up this morning.

UNIT 20

20.1
2 I started (it) last week.
3 they arrived at 5 o'clock.
4 she went (away) on Friday.
5 I wore them yesterday.

20.2
3 WRONG - I finished
4 RIGHT
5 WRONG - did you finish
6 RIGHT
7 WRONG - Jim's grandmother died
8 WRONG - Where were you

20.3
3 played
4 did you go
5 Have you ever met
6 wasn't
7 I've/have just washed
KEY TO EXERCISES

8 washed
9 's/has visited
10 hasn’t come

20.4
1 Did you have
was
2 Have you seen
went
haven’t seen
3 has worked / has been working
was
worked
didn’t enjoy
4 've/ have seen
've/ have never spoken
Have you ever spoken
met

UNIT 21

21.1
3 Glass is made from sand.
4 Stamps are sold in a post office.
5 This room isn’t used very often.
6 Are we allowed to park here?
7 How is this word pronounced?
9 The house was painted last month.
10 Three people were injured in the accident.
11 My bicycle was stolen a few days ago.
12 When was this bridge built?
13 Were you invited to the party last week?
14 How were these windows broken?
15 I wasn’t woken up by the noise.

21.2
2 Football is played in most …
3 Why was the letter sent to …?
4 … where cars are repaired.
5 Where were you born?
6 How many languages are spoken …
7 … but nothing was stolen.
8 When was the bicycle invented?

21.3
3 is made
4 were damaged
5 was given
6 are shown
7 were invited
8 was made
9 was stolen … was found

21.4
2 Sally was born in Birmingham.
3 Her parents were born in Ireland.
4 I was born in …
5 My mother was born in …

UNIT 22

22.1
2 A bridge is being built.
3 The windows are being cleaned.
4 The grass is being cut.
5 The car has been damaged.

22.2
3 The window has been broken.
4 The roof is being repaired.
5 The car has been damaged.
6 The houses are being knocked down.
7 The trees have been cut down.
8 They have been invited to a party.

UNIT 23

23.1
3 are 7 do
4 Does 8 Is
5 Do 9 does
6 Is 10 Are

23.2
2 don’t 6 doesn’t
3 'm/am not 7 'm/am not
4 isn’t 8 aren’t
5 don’t

UNIT 24

24.1
3 got 10 happened
4 brought 11 heard
5 paid 12 put
6 enjoyed 13 caught
7 bought 14 watched
8 sat 15 understood
9 left

24.2
2 began begun
3 ate eaten
4 drank drunk
5 drove driven
6 ran run
7 spoke spoken
8 wrote written
9 came come
10 knew known
11 took taken
12 went gone
13 gave given
14 threw thrown
15 forgot forgotten

24.3
3 slept
4 saw
5 rained
6 lost … seen
7 stolen
8 went
9 finished
10 built

[270]
11 learnt/learned
12 ridden
13 known
14 fell ... hurt

24.4
2 told 8 spoken
3 won 9 cost
4 met 10 driven
5 woken up 11 sold
6 swam 12 flew
7 thought

25.1
2 He used to play football.
3 She used to be a taxi driver.
4 They used to live in the country.
5 He used to wear glasses.
6 This building used to be a hotel.

25.2
2-6
She used to play volleyball.
She used to go out most evenings. / She used to go out in the evenings.
She used to play the guitar.
She used to read a lot. / She used to like reading.
She used to go away two or three times a year. / She used to travel a lot.

25.3
3 used to have
4 used to be
5 go
6 used to eat
7 watches
8 used to live
9 get
10 did you use to play

26.1
2 Richard is going to the cinema.
3 Barbara is meeting Dave.
4 Denise is having lunch with Ken.
5 Tom and Sue are going to a party.

26.2
2 Are you working next week?
3 What are you doing tomorrow evening?
4 What time are your friends arriving?
5 When is Liz going on holiday?

26.3
3 I'm going away at the weekend.
4 I'm playing basketball tomorrow.
5 I'm meeting a friend this evening.
6 I'm going to the cinema on Thursday evening.

Example answers:
3 I'm going away at the weekend.
4 I'm playing basketball tomorrow.
5 I'm meeting a friend this evening.
6 I'm going to the cinema on Thursday evening.

26.4
3 She's getting
4 are going ... are they going
5 finishes
6 I'm not going
7 I'm going ... We're meeting
8 are you getting ... leaves
9 does the film begin
10 are you doing ... I'm working

UNIT 27

27.1
2 I'm going to buy a newspaper.
3 We're going to play football.
4 I'm going to have a bath.

27.2
3 'm/am going to walk
4 'm/am going to stay
5 'm/am going to eat
6 're/are going to give
7 's/is going to lie down
8 Are you going to watch
9 is Rachel going to do

27.3
2 The shelf is going to fall (down).
3 The car is going to turn (left).
4 He's/He is going to kick the ball.

27.4
Example answers:
1 I'm going to phone Ann this evening.
2 I'm going to get up early tomorrow.
3 I'm going to buy some new clothes tomorrow.

28.1
2 she'll be 5 she's
3 she was 6 she was
4 she'll be 7 she'll be

Example answers:
2 I'll be at home.
3 I'll probably be in bed.
4 I'll be at work.
5 I don't know where I'll be.

28.2
2 'll/will 5 'll/will
3 won't 6 'll/will
4 won't 7 won't

Example answers:
3 I think we'll win the game.
4 I don't think I'll be here tomorrow.
5 I think Sue will like her present.
6 I don't think they'll get married.
7 I don't think you'll enjoy the film.

28.3
2 I think I'll have
3 I'll probably be in bed.
4 I don't know where I'll be.
5 I think Sue will like her present.
6 I don't think they'll get married.
7 I don't think you'll enjoy the film.

28.4
2 I think I'll have
3 I'll probably be in bed.
4 I don't know where I'll be.
5 I think Sue will like her present.
6 I don't think they'll get married.
7 I don't think you'll enjoy the film.

29.1
2 I'll send 5 I'll do
3 I'll eat 6 I'll stay
4 I'll sit 7 I'll show

Example answers:
2 I think I'll have
3 I don't think I'll play
4 I don't think I'll buy

29.2
2 I think I'll have
3 I don't think I'll play
4 I don't think I'll buy

Example answers:
2 I'll do
3 I watch
4 I'll go
5 is going to buy
6 I'll give
7 Are you doing ... I'm going
KEY TO EXERCISES

29.4
2 Shall I turn off the television?
3 Shall I make some sandwiches?
4 Shall I turn on the light?

29.5
2 Where shall we go?
3 What shall we buy?
4 Who shall we invite?

UNIT 30

30.1
2 I might see you tomorrow.
3 Ann might forget to phone.
4 It might snow today.
5 I might be late tonight.
6 Mary might not be here.
7 I might not have time to meet you.

30.2
2 I might go away.
3 I might see her on Monday.
4 I might have fish.
5 I might get/take a taxi or ... go by taxi.
6 I might buy a new car.

30.3
3 He might get up early.
4 He isn't / He's not working tomorrow.
5 He might be at home tomorrow morning.
6 He might watch television.
7 He's going out in the afternoon.
8 He might go shopping.

30.4
Example answers:
1 I might read a newspaper.
2 I might go for a drink with some friends.
3 I might have an egg for breakfast.

UNIT 31

31.1
2 Can you ski?
3 Can you play chess?
4 Can you run ten kilometres?
5 Can you drive?
6 Can you ride a horse?
7 I can/can't swim.
8 I can/can't ski.
9 I can/can't play chess.
10 I can/can't run ten kilometres.
11 I can/can't drive.
12 I can/can't ride a horse.

31.2
2 Can see 4 can't find
3 Can't hear 5 can speak

31.3
2 Couldn't eat
3 Can't decide
4 Couldn't find
5 Can't go
6 Couldn't go

31.4
2 Can / Could you pass the salt, (please)?
3 Can / Could you turn off the radio, (please)?
4 Can / Could I have tomato soup, (please)?
5 Can / Could you give me your phone number, (please)?
6 Can / Could I borrow your pen, (please)? or
Can / Could you lend me...

UNIT 32

32.1
2 Must meet
3 Must wash
4 Must learn
5 Must go
6 Must win
7 Must be

32.2
2 I must 5 I had to
3 I had to 6 I had to
4 I must 7 I must

32.3
2 Needn't hurry
3 Mustn't lose
4 Needn't wait
5 Mustn't forget
6 Needn't write

32.4
2 C 4 E
3 A 5 B

32.5
3 Needn't 7 Must
4 Had to 8 Had to
5 Must 9 Needn't
6 Mustn't

UNIT 33

33.1
2 You should go
3 You should clean
4 You should visit
5 You should wear
6 You should take

33.2
2 He shouldn't eat so much.
3 She shouldn't work so hard.
4 He shouldn't drive so fast.

33.3
2 Do you think I should learn (to drive)?
3 Do you think I should get another job?
4 Do you think I should invite Gary (to the party)?

33.4
3 I think you should sell it.
4 I think she should have a holiday.
5 I don't think they should get married.
6 I don't think you should go to work.
7 I think he should go to the doctor.
8 I don't think we should stay there.

Example answers:
2 I think everybody should have enough food.
3 I think people should drive carefully.
4 I don't think the police should carry guns.
5 I think I should do more exercise.
UNIT 34

34.1
2 have to do 4 have to speak
3 has to read 5 has to travel

34.2
2 have to go 3 had to buy
4 have to change 5 had to answer

34.3
2 did he have to wait 3 did she have to go
4 did you have to pay 5 do you have to do

34.4
2 doesn’t have to wait 3 didn’t have to get up early.
4 doesn’t have to work (so) hard. 5 don’t have to leave now.

34.5
3 have to pay 4 had to borrow
5 must stop or have to stop 6 has to meet
7 must tell or have to tell

34.6
2 I have to go to work every day.
3 I have to write a letter tomorrow.
4 I had to go to the dentist yesterday.

UNIT 35

35.1
2 Would you like an apple?
3 Would you like some coffee? / ... a cup of coffee?
4 Would you like some cheese? / ... a piece of cheese?
5 Would you like a sandwich?
6 Would you like some cake? / ... a piece of cake?

35.2
2 Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?
3 Would you like to see my holiday photographs?
4 Would you like to go to a concert next week?
5 Would you like to borrow my umbrella?

35.3
2 Do you like
3 Would you like
4 would you like
5 Would you like
6 I like
7 would you like
8 Would you like
9 Do you like
10 I’d like

UNIT 36

36.1
3 There’s / There is a hospital.
4 There isn’t a swimming pool.
5 There are two cinemas.
6 There isn’t a university.
7 There aren’t any big hotels.

36.2
Example answers:
3 There is a university in ... 4 There are a lot of big shops.
5 There isn’t an airport.
6 There aren’t many factories.

36.3
2 There’s / There is
3 is there
4 There are
5 are there
6 there isn’t
7 Is there
8 Are there
9 There’s / There is ... There aren’t

36.4
2–6
There are nine planets in the solar system.
There are fifteen players in a rugby team.
There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.
There are thirty days in September.
There are fifty states in the USA.

36.5
2 It’s
3 There’s
4 There’s … Is it
5 Is there … there’s
6 It’s
7 Is there

UNIT 37

37.1
2 There was a carpet
3 There were three pictures
4 There was a small table
5 There were some flowers
6 There were some books
7 There was an armchair
8 There was a sofa

37.2
3 There was
4 Was there
5 there weren’t
6 There wasn’t
7 Were there
8 There wasn’t
9 There was
10 there weren’t

37.3
2 There are
3 There was
4 There’s / There is
5 There’s been / There has been
6 there was
7 there will be
8 there were … there are
9 There have been
10 there will be (or there are)

UNIT 38

38.1
2 It’s cold.
3 It’s windy.
4 It’s sunny/fine, or It’s a nice day.
5 It’s snowing.
6 It’s cloudy.

38.2
2 It’s / It is
3 Is it
4 is it … it’s / it is
5 It’s / It is
6 Is it
7 is it
8 It’s / It is
9 It’s / It is
### KEY TO EXERCISES

#### 38.3
1. How far is it from the hotel to the beach?
2. How far is it from New York to Washington?
3. How far is it from your house to the airport?

#### 38.4
1. It's nice to see you again.
2. It's impossible to work in this office.
3. It's easy to make friends.
4. It's interesting to visit different places.
5. It's dangerous to go out alone.

#### 38.5
1. They aren't / They're not married.
2. I haven't had dinner.
3. It isn't cold today.
4. We won't be late.
5. You shouldn't go.

#### 39.6
1. Yes, I have. or No, I haven't.
2. Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
3. Yes, it is. or No, it isn't.
4. Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
5. Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
6. Yes, I will. or No, I won't.
7. Yes, I have. or No, I haven't.
8. Yes, I did. or No, I didn't.
9. Yes, I was. or No, I wasn't.

#### 40.1
1. Do you?
2. Didn't you?
3. Doesn't she?
4. Has he?
5. Did she?
6. Does he?
7. Is it?
8. Isn't it?

#### 40.2
1. Have you?
2. Aren't you?
3. Can't she?
4. Didn't he?
5. Weren't you?
6. Wasn't it?

#### 41.1
1. Either, or
2. Too, as well as
3. Still, yet
4. Also
5. As well
6. As a result
7. In addition to
8. In addition
9. In addition
10. Besides
11. Furthermore
12. Moreover

#### 41.2
1. So am I.
2. Neither have I.
3. Neither do I.
4. Neither has she.
5. Neither has he.
6. Neither have we.
7. Neither have we.
8. Neither did I.
9. Neither did I.
10. Neither did I.
11. Neither did I.
12. Neither did I.

#### 41.3
1. So am I.
2. So can I. or I can't.
3. Neither am I. or I am.
4. Neither do I. or I don't.
5. Neither do I. or I do.
6. So did I. or I didn't.
7. Neither have I. or I have.
8. Neither do I. or I did.
9. So am I. or I'm not.
10. Neither have I. or I have.
11. Neither did I. or I did.
12. So do I. or I don't.
42.5
3 He wasn't born in London.
4 He doesn't like London.
5 He'd like to live in the country.
6 He can drive.
7 He hasn't got a car.
8 He doesn't read newspapers.
9 He isn't interested in politics.
10 He watches TV most evenings.
11 He didn't watch TV last night.
12 He went out last night.

UNIT 43

43.1
3 Were you late this morning?
4 Has Ann got a key?
5 Will you be here tomorrow?
6 Is Paul going out this evening?
7 Do you like your job?
8 Does Linda live near here?
9 Did you enjoy your holiday?
10 Did you have a shower this morning?

43.2
2 Do you use it a lot?
3 Did you use it yesterday?
4 Do you enjoy driving?
5 Are you a good driver?
6 Have you ever had an accident?

43.3
3 What are the children doing?
4 How is cheese made?
5 Is your sister coming to the party?
6 Why don't you tell the truth?
7 Have your guests arrived yet?
8 What time does your train leave?
9 Was your car damaged in the accident?
10 Why didn't Ann go to work?

43.4
3 What are you reading?
4 What time did she go to bed?
5 When are they going?
6 Where did you meet him?
7 Where has she gone?
8 Why can't you come to the party?
9 How much do you need?
10 Why doesn't she like you?

UNIT 44

44.1
2 What fell off the shelf?
3 Who wants to see me?
4 Who took your umbrella?
5 What made you ill?
6 Who is/Who's coming?

44.2
3 Who did you phone?
4 What happened last night?
5 Who knows the answer?
6 Who did the washing-up?
7 What did Jill do?
8 What woke you up?
9 Who saw the accident?
10 Who did you see?
11 Who has got / Who's got your pen?
12 What does this word mean?

UNIT 45

45.1
2 What are you looking for?
3 Who did you go to the cinema with?
4 What/Who was the film about?
5 Who did you give the money to?
6 Who was the book written by?

45.2
2 What are they looking at?
3 Who is he writing to?
KEY TO EXERCISES

UNIT 47

47.1
2 How long does it take by car from Rome to Milan?
3 How long does it take by train from Paris to Geneva?
4 How long does it take by bus from the city centre to the airport?

47.2
Example answers:
2 It takes ... hours to fly from ... to New York.
3 It takes ... years to study to be a doctor in ...
4 It takes ... to walk from my home to the nearest shop.
5 It takes ... to get from my home to the nearest airport.

47.3
2 How long did it take you to walk to the station?
3 How long did it take him to clean the windows?
4 How long did it take you to learn to ski?
5 How long did it take them to repair the car?

47.4
2 It took us 20 minutes to walk home. / ... to get home.
3 It took me six months to learn to drive.
4 It took Mark/him two hours to drive to London. / ... to get to London.
5 It took Linda a long time to find a job. / ... to get a job.
6 It took me ... to ...

UNIT 48

48.1
2 I don't know where she is.
3 I don't know how old it is.
4 I don't know when he'll be here.
5 I don't know why he was angry.
6 I don't know how long she has lived here.

48.2
2 where Susan works
3 what Peter said
4 why he went home early
5 what time the film begins
6 how the accident happened

48.3
2 are you
3 they are
4 the museum is
5 do you want
6 elephants eat

48.4
2 Do you know if/whether they are married?
3 Do you know if/whether Sue knows Bill?
4 Do you know if/whether George will be here tomorrow?
5 Do you know if/whether he passed his exam?

48.5
2 Do you know where Paula is?
3 Do you know if/whether she is working today? / ... she's working today?
4 Do you know what time she starts work?
5 Do you know if/whether the shops are open tomorrow?
6 Do you know where Sarah and Tim live?
7 Do you know if/whether they went to Ann's party?

48.6
Example answers:
2 Do you know what time the bus leaves?
3 Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is?
4 I don't know what I'm going to do this evening.
5 Do you know if Tom is working today?

UNIT 49

49.1
2 She said (that) she was very busy.
3 She said (that) she couldn't go to the party.
4 He said (that) he had to go out.
5 He said (that) he was learning Russian.
6 She said (that) she didn't feel very well.
7 They said (that) they would be home late. / ... they'd be ...
8 She said (that) she had just come back from holiday. / ... she'd just come back ...
9 She said (that) she was going to buy a computer.
10 They said (that) they hadn't got a key. / They said (that) they didn't have a key.

49.2
2 She said (that) she wasn't hungry.
3 He said (that) he needed it.
4 she said (that) she didn't want to go.
5 She said (that) I could have it.
6 He said (that) he would send me a postcard. / ... he'd send ...
7 Linda said (that) he had gone home. / ... he'd gone home.
8 He said (that) he wanted to watch TV.
9 She said (that) she was going to the cinema.

49.3
3 said 7 said
told 8 told
tell 9 tell
say 10 say

UNIT 50

50.1
3 phone
4 phone Paul
to phone Paul
to phone Paul
phone Paul
to phone Paul
phone Paul
phone Paul
50.2
3 get
4 going
5 watch
6 flying
7 listening
8 eat
9 waiting
10 wear
11 doing ... staying
50.3
4 to go
5 rain
6 to leave
7 help
8 studying
9 to go
10 wearing
11 to stay
12 have
13 having
14 to have
15 hear
16 go
17 listening
18 to make
19 to know ...
20 use

51.1
3 to see
4 to swim
5 cleaning
6 to go
7 visiting
8 going
9 to be
10 waiting
11 to do
12 to speak
13 to ask
14 crying / to cry
15 to work ... talking

51.2
3 reading
4 to see
5 to send
6 walking
7 to lose
8 to help
9 to go
10 watching / to watch
11 to wait
12 raiming

51.3
2 going/to go to museums.
3 writing/to write letters.
4 to go (there)

51.4
Example answers:
1 I enjoy cooking.
2 I don’t like driving.
3 If it’s a nice day tomorrow, I’d like to have a picnic by the lake.
4 When I’m on holiday, I like to do very little.
5 I don’t mind travelling alone but I prefer to travel with somebody.
6 I wouldn’t like to live in a big city.

52.1
2 I want you to listen carefully.
3 I don’t want you to be angry.
4 Do you want me to wait for you?
5 I don’t want you to phone me tonight.
6 I want you to meet Sarah.

52.2
2 A woman told me to turn left after the bridge.
3 I advised him to go to the doctor.
4 She asked me to help her.
5 I told Tom to come back in ten minutes.
6 Paul let me use his phone.
7 I told her not to phone before 8 o’clock.
8 Ann’s mother taught her to play the piano.

52.3
2 to repeat
3 wait
4 to arrive
5 to get
6 go
7 borrow
8 to tell
9 to make (or to get)
10 think

53.1
2-4
I went to the café to meet a friend.
I went to the post office to get some stamps.
I went to the supermarket to buy some food.

53.2
2 to read the newspaper.
3 to open this door
4 to get some fresh air
5 to wake him up
6 to see who it was

53.3
Example answers:
2 to talk to you now.
3 to tell her about the party.
4 to do some shopping.
5 to buy a car.

53.4
2 to 7 to
3 to 8 to
4 for 9 for
5 to 10 to ... for
6 for

53.5
2 for the film to begin.
3 for it to arrive.
4 for you to tell me.

54.1
3 to
4 to
5 – (no preposition)
6 for
7 to
8 on ... to
9 for
10 on
11 to
12 – (no preposition)
13 on
14 for
15 on
KEY TO EXERCISES

54.2
2 went fishing.
3 goes swimming
4 going skiing.
5 go shopping.
6 went jogging

54.3
2 to the bank
3 shopping
4 to sleep
5 home
6 skiing
7 riding
8 for a walk
9 on holiday ... to Portugal

55.1
2 get your jacket
3 get a doctor
4 get a taxi
5 get the job
6 get some milk
7 get a ticket
8 gets a good salary

55.2
2 getting dark
3 getting married
4 getting ready
5 getting late

55.3
2 get wet
3 got married
4 get angry
5 got lost

55.4
2 got to Bristol at 11.45.
3 I left the party at 11.15 and got home at midnight.
4 (Example answer) I left home at 8.30 and got to the airport at 10 o’clock.

UNIT 58

58.1
2 him
3 them
4 her

58.2
2 I ... them
3 he ... her
4 they ... us
5 we ... him

58.3
2 I like him.
3 I don’t like it.
4 Do you like it?
5 I don’t like her.
6 Do you like them?

58.5
2 Can you give it to him?
3 Can you give them to her?
4 Can you give it to me?
5 Can you give it to them?
6 Can you give them to us?
KEY TO EXERCISES

UNIT 59

59.1
2 her hands
3 our hands
4 his hands
5 their hands
6 your hands

59.2
2 They live with their parents.
3 We live with our parents.
4 Julia lives with her parents.
5 I live with my parents.
6 John lives with his parents.
7 Do you live with your parents?
8 Most children live with their parents.

59.3
2 their
3 his
4 her

59.4
2 his
3 Their
4 our
5 her
6 my
7 your

59.5
2 my key
3 Her husband
4 your coat
5 their homework
6 his name
7 Our house

60.1
2 mine
3 ours
4 hers
5 theirs

60.2
2 yours
3 my ... Mine
4 Yours ... mine
5 her
6 My ... hers

60.3
2 of hers
3 of ours
4 friend of ours
5 friend of mine
6 friend of his
7 friend of yours

60.4
2 Whose camera is this?
   It's hers.
3 Whose gloves are these?
   They're mine.
4 Whose hat is this?
   It's his.
5 Whose money is this?
   It's yours.
6 Whose books are these?
   They're ours.

UNIT 60

60.1
2 mine
3 ours
4 hers
5 theirs

60.2
2 yours
3 my ... Mine
4 Yours ... mine
5 her
6 My ... hers

60.3
2 their
3 Ours

60.4
2 Whose camera is this?
   It's hers.
3 Whose gloves are these?
   They're mine.
4 Whose hat is this?
   It's his.
5 Whose money is this?
   It's yours.
6 Whose books are these?
   They're ours.

UNIT 61

61.1
2 Yes, I know her but I can't remember her name.
3 Yes, I know them but I can't remember their names.
4 Yes, I know you but I can't remember your name.

61.2
2 to stay with him at his house
3 to stay with them at their house
4 to stay with me at my house
5 to stay with her at her house
6 to stay with you at your house?

61.3
2 I gave her my address and she gave me hers.
3 He gave me his address and I gave him mine.
4 We gave them our address and they gave us theirs.
5 She gave him her address and he gave her his.
6 You gave us your address and we gave you ours.
7 They gave you their address and you gave them yours.

61.4
2 them
3 him
4 our
5 yours

61.5
7 their
8 Ours

62.1
2 myself
3 herself
4 themselves
5 myself

62.2
2 When I saw him, he was by himself.
3 Don't go out by yourself.
4 I went to the cinema by myself.
5 My sister lives by herself.
6 Many people live by themselves.

62.3
2 They can't see each other.
3 They often write to each other.
4 They don't know each other.
5 They're / They are sitting next to each other.
6 They gave each other presents/a present.

62.4
3 each other
4 yourselves
5 us
6 ourselves

UNIT 62

62.1
2 myself
3 herself
4 themselves
5 myself

62.2
2 When I saw him, he was by himself.
3 Don't go out by yourself.
4 I went to the cinema by myself.
5 My sister lives by herself.
6 Many people live by themselves.

62.3
2 They can't see each other.
3 They often write to each other.
4 They don't know each other.
5 They're / They are sitting next to each other.
6 They gave each other presents/a present.

62.4
3 each other
4 yourselves
5 us
6 ourselves

UNIT 63

63.1
3 Mary is Brian's wife.
4 James is Julia's brother.
5 James is Daniel's uncle.
6 Julia is Paul's wife.
7 Mary is Daniel's grandmother.
8 Julia is James's sister.
9 Paul is Julia's husband.
10 Paul is Daniel's father.
11 Daniel is James's nephew.

63.2
2 Andy's
3 David's
4 Jane's
5 Diane's
6 Alice's

63.3
3 OK
4 Bill's phone number
KEY TO EXERCISES

5 My brother's job
6 OK
7 OK
8 Paula's favourite colour
9 your mother's birthday
10 My parents' house
11 OK
12 OK
13 Silvia's party
14 OK

UNIT 64

64.1
2 a 5 a 8 an
3 a 6 an 9 an
4 an 7 a

64.2
2 a vegetable
3 a game
4 a tool
5 a mountain
6 a planet
7 a fruit
8 a river
9 a flower
10 a musical instrument

64.3
2 He's a shop assistant.
3 She's a photographer.
4 She's a taxi driver.
5 He's an electrician.
6 She's a nurse.
7 He's a private detective.
8 I'm a/an ...

64.4
2-8
Tom never wears a hat. I can't ride a bicycle. My brother is an artist. Barbara works in a bookshop. Ann wants to learn a foreign language. Jim lives in an old house. This evening I'm going to a party.

UNIT 65

65.1
2 boats 4 cities
3 women 5 umbrellas

UNIT 66

66.1
3 a jug 8 money
4 milk 9 a wallet
5 toothpaste 10 sand
6 a toothbrush 11 a bucket
7 an egg 12 an envelope

66.2
3 a hat
4 a job?
5 OK
6 an apple ...
7 a party ...
8 a wonderful thing.
9 an island.
10 a key.
11 OK
12 a good idea.
13 a car?
14 a cup of coffee?

UNIT 67

67.1
2 I bought a newspaper (or a paper), some flowers (or a bunch of flowers) and a pen.
3 I bought some stamps, some postcards and some bread (or a loaf of bread).
4 I bought some toothpaste, some soap (or a bar of soap) and a comb.

67.2
2 Would you like some coffee? (or ... a cup of coffee?)
3 Would you like a biscuit?
4 Would you like some bread? (or ... a piece of bread? / a slice of bread?)
5 Would you like a chocolate?
6 Would you like some chocolate? (or ... a piece of chocolate?)

67.3
2 some ... some
3 some
4 a ... some
5 an ... some
6 a ... a ... some
7 some
8 some
9 some ... a

UNIT 66

66.3
2 a piece of wood
3 a glass of water
4 a bar of chocolate
5 a cup of tea
6 a piece of paper
7 a bowl of soup
8 a loaf of bread
9 a jar of honey

15 OK
16 ... an umbrella.
UNIT 68

68.1
3 a
4 the
5 an
6 the ... the
7 a ... a
8 a ... a
9 ... a student ... a journalist ... a flat near the college ... The flat is ...
10 ... two children, a boy and a girl. The boy is seven years old and the girl is three ... in a factory ... hasn't got a job ...

68.2
2 the airport
3 a cup
4 a nice picture
5 the radio
6 the floor

68.3
2 ... send me a postcard.
3 What is the name of ...
4 ... a very big country.
5 What is the largest ...
6 ... the colour of the carpet.
7 ... a headache.
8 ... an old house near the station.
9 ... the name of the director of the film ...

UNIT 69

69.1
3 ... the second floor.
4 ... the moon?
5 ... the best hotel in this town?
6 OK
7 ... the city centre.
8 ... the end of May.
9 OK
10 ... the first time I met her.
11 OK
12 What's the biggest city in the world?
13 OK
14 My dictionary is on the top shelf on the right.
15 We live in the country about five miles from the nearest village.

69.2
2 the same time
3 the same age
4 the same colour
5 the same problem

69.3
2 the guitar
3 breakfast
4 the radio
5 television/TV
6 the sea

69.4
2 the name
3 The sky
4 television
5 the police
6 the capital
7 lunch
8 the middle

UNIT 70

70.1
2 the cinema
3 hospital
4 the airport
5 home
6 prison

70.2
3 school
4 the station
5 home
6 bed
7 the post office

70.3
2 the cinema
3 go to bed
4 go to prison
5 go to the dentist
6 go to university/college
7 go to hospital / are taken to hospital

70.4
3 the doctor
4 OK
5 OK
6 OK
7 the bank
8 OK
9 OK
10 the city centre

UNIT 71

71.1
Example answers:
2 I don't like dogs.
3 I don't mind museums.
4 I love big cities.
5 I like basketball.
6 I love TV quiz shows.
7 I don't like loud music.
8 I hate computer games.

71.2
Example answers:
2 I'm not interested in politics.
3 I'm interested in sport.
4 I don't know much about art.
5 I don't know anything about astronomy.
6 I know a little about economics.

71.3
3 friends
4 parties
5 The shops
6 the milk
7 milk
8 football
9 computers
10 The water
11 cold water
12 the salt
13 the people
14 Vegetables
15 the children
16 the words
17 photographs
18 the photographs
19 English ... international business
20 Money ... happiness

UNIT 72

72.1
3 Sweden
4 The Amazon
5 Asia
6 The Pacific
KEY TO EXERCISES

73.1
2 that house
3 these postcards
4 those birds
5 this seat
6 These plates

73.2
2 Is that your umbrella?
3 Is this your book?
4 Are those your books?
5 Is that your bicycle?
6 Are these your keys?
7 Are those your keys?
8 Is this your watch?
9 Are those your glasses?
10 Are these your gloves?

73.3
2 that's
3 This is
4 That's
5 that
6 this is
7 That's
8 that's

UNIT 74

74.1
2 I don't need one.
3 I'm going to buy one.
4 I haven't got one.
5 I've just had one.
6 there's one in Mill Road.

74.2
2 a new one
3 a better one
4 an old one
5 a big one
6 a different one

74.3
2 Which ones?
The green ones.
3 Which one?
The one with a/the red door.
4 Which one?
The black one.
5 Which ones?
The ones on the wall.
6 Which ones?
The ones on the top shelf.
7 Which one?
The tall one with long hair.
8 Which ones?
The yellow ones.
9 Which one?
The one with a moustache and
glasses.
10 Which ones?
The ones you took on the beach last week.

UNIT 75

75.1
2 some
3 any
4 any
5 any
6 some
7 any
8 some
9 some
10 any

75.2
2 some letters
3 any photographs
4 any foreign languages
5 some friends
6 some milk
7 any batteries
8 some fresh air
9 some cheese
10 any help

75.3
3 I've got some / I have some
4 I haven't got any / I haven't any
5 I didn't buy any
6 I bought some

75.4
2 something
3 anything
4 anything
5 Somebody/Someone
6 anything
7 anybody/anyone
8 something
9 anything
10 anybody/anyone

UNIT 76

76.1
2 There are no shops near here.
3 Carol has got no free time.
4 There is no light in this room.
5 There aren't any buses today.
6 Tom hasn't got any brothers or sisters.
76.2
2 any
3 any
4 no
5 any
6 no
7 any
8 no
9 a ny
10 no

76.3
2 no money
3 any questions
4 no friends
5 no difference
6 any furniture
7 no answer
KEY TO EXERCISES

UNIT 78

78.1
2 something
3 somewhere
4 somebody/someone

78.2
2a Nowhere.
3a Nothing.
4a Nobody/No-one.
2b I'm not going anywhere.
3b I don't want anything.
4b I'm not looking for anybody/anyone.

UNIT 79

79.1
2 Every day
3 every time
4 Every room
5 every word

79.2
2 every day
3 all day
4 every day
5 all day
6 every day
7 all day

79.3
2 every 6 all
3 all 7 every
4 all 8 all
5 Every 9 every

UNIT 80

80.1
3 Some
4 Most of
5 most
6 any of
7 all or all of
8 None of
9 any of
10 Most
11 most of
12 Some
13 All or All of
14 some of
15 most of

80.2
2 All of them.
3 Some of them.
4 None of them.
5 Most of them.
6 None of it.

80.3
3 Some people ...
4 Some of the questions ...
5 OK
6 All insects ...
7 OK or All of these books
8 Most of the students ...
9 OK
10 ... most of the night
KEY TO EXERCISES

UNIT 81

81.1
3 Both 9 Neither
4 Neither 10 either of
5 Neither 11 Both
6 both 12 neither of
7 Either 13 Both
8 neither of 14 either of

81.2
2 Both windows are open.
3 Neither man is wearing a hat.
4 Both men have (got) cameras, or are carrying cameras.
5 Both buses go to the airport, or are going to the airport.
6 Neither answer is right.

81.3
3 Both of them are students.
4 Neither of them has (got) a car.
5 Both of them live in London.
6 Both of them like cooking.
7 Neither of them can play the piano.
8 Both of them read newspapers.
9 Neither of them is interested in sport.

UNIT 82

82.1
2 many 8 many
3 much 9 How many
4 many 10 How much
5 many 11 How much
6 much 12 How many
7 much

82.2
2 much time
3 many countries
4 many people
5 much luggage
6 many times

82.3
2 a lot of interesting things
3 a lot of accidents
4 a lot of fun
5 a lot of traffic

82.4
3 a lot of snow
4 OK

82.5
3 She plays tennis a lot.
4 He doesn’t use his car much.
(or … a lot.)
5 He doesn’t go out much.
(or … a lot.)
6 She travels a lot.

UNIT 83

83.1
2 a few 5 a little
3 a little 6 a few
4 a few

83.2
2 a little milk
3 A few days
4 a little Russian
5 a few friends
6 a few times
7 a few chairs
8 a little fresh air

83.3
2 very little coffee
3 very little rain
4 very few hotels
5 very little time
6 Very few people
7 very little work

83.4
2 A few 5 few
3 a little 6 a little
4 little 7 little

83.5
2 … a little luck
3 … a few things
4 OK
5 … a few questions
6 … few people

UNIT 84

84.1
2 I like that green jacket.
3 Do you like classical music?
4 I had a wonderful holiday.
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

84.2
2 black clouds
3 long holiday
4 hot water
5 fresh air
6 sharp knife
7 dangerous job

84.3
2 It looks new.
3 I feel ill.
4 You look surprised.
5 They smell nice.
6 It tastes horrible.

84.4
2 It doesn’t look new.
3 You don’t sound American.
4 I don’t feel cold.
5 They don’t look heavy.
6 It doesn’t taste good.

UNIT 85

85.1
2 badly 5 fast
3 quietly 6 dangerously
4 angrily

85.2
2 Come quickly
3 work hard
4 sleep well
5 win easily
6 Think carefully
7 know her very well
8 explain things very clearly/well

85.3
2 angry 7 suddenly
3 slowly 8 quiet
4 slow 9 badly
5 careful 10 nice (See Unit 84)
6 hard

85.4
2 well 5 well
3 good 6 good … good
4 well
86.1
2 bigger
3 slower
4 more expensive
5 higher
6 more dangerous

86.2
2 stronger
3 happier
4 more modern
5 more important
6 better
7 larger
8 more serious
9 prettier
10 more crowded

86.3
2 hotter/warmer
3 more expensive
4 worse
5 further
6 more difficult or harder

86.4
3 taller
4 harder
5 more comfortable
6 better
7 nicer
8 heavier
9 more interested
10 warmer
11 better
12 bigger
13 more beautiful
14 sharper
15 more polite

87.1
3 Liz is taller than Ben.
4 Liz starts work earlier than Ben.
5 Ben works harder than Liz.
6 Ben has got more money than Liz.
7 Liz is a better driver than Ben.
8 Ben is more patient than Liz.
9 Ben is a better dancer than Liz.
10 Liz dances better than Liz.
11 Liz is more intelligent than Ben.

87.2
2 You’re older than her. / ... than she is.
3 You work harder than me. / ... than I do.
4 You watch TV more than him. / ... than he does.
5 You’re a better cook than me. / ... than I am. or You cook better than me. / ... than I do.
6 You know more people than us. / ... than we do.
7 You’ve got more money than them. / ... than they have.
8 You can run faster than me. / ... than I can.
9 You’ve been here longer than her. / ... than she has.
10 You got up earlier than them. / ... than they did.
11 You were more surprised than him. / ... than he was.

87.3
2 Jack’s mother is much younger than his father.
3 My camera cost a bit more than yours. / ... than your camera. or My camera was a bit more expensive than ... 
4 I feel much better today than yesterday. / ... than I did yesterday. / ... than I felt yesterday.
5 It’s a bit warmer today than yesterday. / ... than it was yesterday.
6 Ann is a much better tennis player than me / than I am. or Ann is much better at tennis than me / than I am. or Ann plays tennis much better than me / than I do.

87.4
2 Julia lives in the same street as Caroline.
3 Julia got up at the same time as Andrew.
4 Andrew’s car is the same colour as Caroline’s.

88.1
2 A is longer than B but not as long as C.
3 C is heavier than A but not as heavy as B.
4 A is older than C but not as old as B.
5 B has got more money than C but not as much as A. or ... but less (money) than A.
6 C works harder than A but not as hard as B.

88.2
2 Your room isn’t as big as mine. / ... as my room.
3 I didn’t get up as early as you. / ... as you did.
4 They didn’t play as well as us. / ... as we did.
5 You haven’t been here as long as me. / ... as I have.
6 He isn’t as nervous as her. / ... as she is.

88.3
2 as 6 than
3 than 7 as
4 than 8 than
5 as

88.4
2 Julia lives in the same street as Caroline.
3 Julia got up at the same time as Andrew.
4 Andrew’s car is the same colour as Caroline’s.

89.1
2 C is longer than A.
D is the longest.
B is the shortest.
3 D is younger than C.
B is the youngest.
C is the oldest.
4 D is more expensive than A.
C is the most expensive.
A is the cheapest.
5 A is better than C.
A is the best.
D is the worst.
KEY TO EXERCISES

89.2
2 the happiest day
3 the best film
4 the most popular singer
5 the worst mistake
6 the prettiest village
7 the coldest day
8 the most boring person

89.3
2 Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
3-6
Alaska is the largest state in the USA.
Brazil is the largest country in South America.
Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.
The Nile is the longest river in Africa. / ... in the world.

UNIT 90

90.1
2 enough chairs
3 enough paint
4 enough wind

90.2
2 The car isn't big enough.
3 His legs aren't long enough.
4 He isn't strong enough.

90.3
3 old enough
4 enough time
5 big enough
6 eat enough
7 enough fruit
8 tired enough
9 practise enough

90.4
2 sharp enough to cut
3 warm enough to have
4 enough bread to make
5 well enough to win
6 enough time to read

UNIT 91

91.1
2 too heavy
3 too low
4 too fast
5 too big
6 too crowded

91.2
3 enough 8 enough
4 too many 9 too
5 too 10 too many
6 enough 11 too much
7 too much

91.3
2 It's too far.
3 It's too expensive.
4 It isn't / It's not big enough.
5 It was too difficult.
6 It isn't good enough.
7 I'm too busy.
8 It was too long.

91.4
2 too early to go to bed.
3 too young to get married.
4 too dangerous to go out at night.
5 too late to phone Ann (now).
6 too surprised to say anything.

UNIT 92

92.1
3 I like this picture very much.
4 Tom started his new job last week.
5 OK
6 Jane bought a present for her friend. or Jane bought her friend a present.
7 I drink three cups of coffee every day.
8 OK
9 I borrowed fifty pounds from my brother.

92.2
2 I wrote two letters this morning.
3 Paul passed the exam easily.
4 Ann doesn't speak French very well.
5 I did a lot of work yesterday.
6 Do you know London well?
7 We enjoyed the party very much.
8 I explained the problem carefully.
9 We met some friends at the airport.

UNIT 93

93.1
2 He always gets up early.
3 He's / He is never late for work.
4 He sometimes gets angry.
5 He often goes swimming.
6 He's / He is usually at home in the evenings.

93.2
2 Susan is always polite.
3 I usually finish work at 5 o'clock.
4 Jill has just started a new job.
5 I rarely go to bed before midnight.
6 The bus isn't usually late.
7 I don't often eat fish.
8 I will never forget what you said.
9 Have you ever lost your passport?
10 Do you still work in the same place?
They always stay in the same hotel.
Dian e doesn’t usually work on Saturdays.
Is Tina already here?
What do you usually have for breakfast?
I can never remember his name.

Yes, and I also speak French.
Yes, and I’m also hungry.
Yes, and I've also been to Ireland.
Yes, and I also bought some books.

They both play football. They're both students. They've both got cars. / They both have cars.
They are all married. They were all born in England. They all live in New York.

Do you still live in Clare Street?
Are you still a student?
Have you still got a motor-bike? / Do you still have...
Do you still go to the cinema a lot?
Do you still want to be a teacher?

He gave it to Gary.
He gave them to Sarah.
He gave it to his sister.
He gave it to a neighbour.

Can you lend me an umbrella?
Can you give me your address?
Can you lend me ten pounds?
Can you send me some information?
Can you show me the letter?
Can you get me some stamps?

They haven’t finished (dinner) yet. / They haven’t finished eating yet.
Is Ann here yet? or Has Ann arrived/come yet?
Have you got your (exam) results yet? / Have you had your... / Have you received your...
Have you decided where to go yet? / Do you know where you’re going yet?
She’s/She has already gone/ left.
I’ve already got one. / I already have one.
I’ve/I have already paid (it).
he already knows.

He gave Joanna a plant.
I gave Richard some gloves / a pair of gloves.
I gave Diane some chocolates / a box of chocolates.
I gave Rachel some flowers / a bunch of flowers.
I gave Kevin a pen.

Can you lend me some money
Can you send the letter to me
Can you buy me a present
Can you pass me the sugar

They gave it to her

3 at 11 at
4 on 12 in
5 in 13 on
6 in 14 on
7 on 15 at
8 on 16 at
9 at 17 at
10 on 18 in
## KEY TO EXERCISES

### UNIT 97

#### 97.1

| 2 Alex lived in Canada until 1990. |
| 3 Alex has lived in England since 1990. |
| 4 Alice lived in France until 1991. |
| 5 Alice has lived in Switzerland since 1991. |
| 6 Carol worked in a hotel from 1990 to 1993. |
| 7 Carol has worked in a restaurant since 1993. |
| 8 Gerry was a teacher from 1983 to 1989. |
| 9 Gerry has been a salesman since 1989. |

#### 97.2

| 2 until | 9 since |
| 3 for | 10 until |
| 4 since | 11 for |
| 5 Until | 12 until |
| 6 for | 13 Since |
| 7 for | 14 for |
| 8 until |

### UNIT 98

#### 98.1

| 2 after lunch |
| 3 before the end |
| 4 during the course |
| 5 before they went to Australia |
| 6 during the night |
| 7 while you are waiting |
| 8 after the concert |

#### 98.2

| 3 while |
| 4 for |

### UNIT 99

#### 99.1

| 2 In the box. |
| 3 On the box. |
| 4 On the wall. |
| 5 At the bus stop. |
| 6 In the field. |
| 7 On the balcony. |
| 8 In the pool. |
| 9 At the window. |
| 10 On the ceiling. |
| 11 On the table. |
| 12 At the table. |

#### 99.2

| 2 in |
| 3 on |
| 4 in |
| 5 on |
| 6 at |
| 7 in |
| 8 in |
| 9 at |
| 10 at |
| 11 in |
| 12 at |
| 13 on |
| 14 at |
| 15 on the wall in the living room |

### UNIT 100

#### 100.1

| 2 At the airport. |
| 3 In bed. |
| 4 On a ship. |
| 5 In the sky. |
| 6 At a party. |
| 7 At the doctor's. |
| 8 On the second floor. |
| 9 At work. |
| 10 On a plane. |
| 11 In a taxi. |
| 12 At a wedding. |

#### 100.2

| 2 in | 9 in |
| 3 in | 10 in |
| 4 at | 11 on |
| 5 at | 12 on |
| 6 in | 13 at |
| 7 at | 14 in |
| 8 at | 15 on |

### UNIT 101

#### 101.1

| 2 to | 6 to |
| 3 in | 7 to |
| 4 to | 8 in |
| 5 in |

#### 101.2

| 3 to |
| 4 to |
| 5 at home ... to work |
| 6 at |
| 7 — (no preposition) |
| 8 to |
| 9 at |
| 10 at a restaurant ... to the hotel |

#### 101.3

| 2 to | 9 to |
| 3 to | 10 at |
| 4 in | 11 at |
| 5 to | 12 to Mary's house |
| 6 to | ... at home |
| 7 at | 13 — (no preposition) |
| 8 to | 14 study at ... go to |
101.4
1 to
2 — (no preposition)
3 at
4 in
5 to
6 — (no preposition)

101.5
Example answers:
2 to work.
3 at work.
4 to Canada.
5 to parties.
6 at a friend’s house.

102.1
2 next to / beside / by
3 in front of
4 between
5 next to / beside / by
6 in front of
7 behind
8 on the left
9 in the middle

102.2
2 behind
3 above
4 in front of
5 on
6 by / next to / beside
7 below / under
8 above
9 under
10 by / next to / beside
11 opposite
12 on

102.3
2 The fountain is in front of the theatre.
3 The bank/bookshop is opposite the theatre. or Paul’s office is opposite the theatre. or The theatre is opposite …
4 The bank/bookshop/supermarket is next to …
5 Paul’s office is above the bookshop.
6 The bookshop is between the bank and the supermarket.

103.1
2 Go under the bridge.
3 Go up the hill.
4 Go down the steps.
5 Go along this street.
6 Go into the hotel.
7 Go past the hotel.
8 Go out of the hotel.
9 Go over the bridge.
10 Go through the park.

103.2
2 off
3 over
4 out of
5 across
6 round/around
7 through
8 on
9 round/around
10 into/through a window

103.3
1 out of
2 round/around
3 in
4 from here to the airport
5 round/around
6 on/over
7 over
8 out of

104.1
2 on time
3 on holiday
4 on the phone
5 on television

104.2
2 by
3 with
4 about
5 on
6 by
7 at
8 on
9 with
10 about grammar by Vera P. Bull

104.3
1 with
2 without
3 by
4 about
5 at
6 by
7 on
8 with
9 at
10 by
11 about
12 by
13 on
14 with
15 by
16 by

105.1
2 in
3 to
4 at
5 with
6 of

105.2
2 at
3 to
4 about
5 of
6 of
7 from
8 in
9 of
10 about
11 of
12 for getting angry with you

105.3
2 interested in going
3 good at getting
4 fed up with waiting
5 sorry for waking

105.4
2 Sue walked past me without speaking.
3 Don’t do anything without asking me first.
4 I went out without locking the door.

105.5
Example answers:
2 I’m afraid of the dark.
3 I’m not very good at drawing.
4 I’m not interested in cars.
5 I’m fed up with living in London.
KEY TO EXERCISES

UNIT 106

106.1
2 to 5 at
3 for 6 for
4 to

106.2
2 to
3 to
4 for
5 to
6 of/about
7 for
8 on
9 to
10 for
11 to
12 – (no preposition)
13 to
14 on
15 of/about

106.3
1 at 4 after,
2 after 5 at
3 for 6 for

106.4
Example answers:
3 It depends on the programme.
4 It depends (on) what it is.
5 It depends on the weather.
6 It depends (on) how much you want.

UNIT 107

107.1
2 went in
3 looked up
4 rode off
5 turned round/around or
looked round/around
6 got off
7 sat down
8 got out

107.2
2 away/out
3 round/around
4 going out ... be back
5 down
6 over
7 back
8 in

107.3
9 up
10 going away ... coming back

UNIT 108

108.1
2 She took off her hat. or
She took her hat off.
3 He put down his bag. or
He put his bag down.
4 She picked up the magazine. or
She picked the magazine up.
5 He put on his sunglasses. or
He put his sunglasses on.
6 She turned off the tap. or
She turned the tap off.

108.2
2 He put his jacket on.
He put it on.
3 She took off her glasses.
She took them off.
4 Put your pens down.
Put them down.
5 They gave the money back.
They gave it back.
6 I turned off the lights.
I turned them off.

UNIT 109

109.1
3 I went to the window and (I)
looked out.
4 I wanted to phone you but I
didn't have your number.
5 I jumped into the river and (I)
swam to the other side.
6 I usually drive to work but I
went by bus this morning.
7 Do you want me to come with
you or shall I wait here?

109.2
Example answers:
2 because it was raining, / because
the weather was bad.
3 but it was closed.
4 so he didn't eat anything, / so he
didn't want anything to eat.
5 because there was a lot of traffic.
/ because the traffic was bad.
6 Sue said goodbye, got into her
car and drove off/away.

109.3
Example answers:
3 I went to the cinema but the
film wasn't very good.
4 I went to a café and met some
friends of mine.
5 There was a film on television,
so I watched it.
6 I got up in the middle of the
night because I couldn't sleep.

UNIT 110

110.1
2 When I'm tired, I like to watch
TV.
3 When I phoned her, there was
no answer.
4 When I go on holiday, I always
go to the same place.
5 When the programme ended, I
switched off the TV.
6 When I arrived at the hotel,
there were no rooms.
110.2
2 when they heard the news
3 they went to live in New Zealand
4 while they were away
5 before they came here
6 somebody broke into the house
7 they didn’t believe me

110.3
1 I finish
2 it’s
3 I’ll be … she leaves
4 stops
5 We’ll come … we’re
6 I come … I’ll bring
7 I’m
8 I’ll give … I go

110.4
Example answers:
2 you finish your work?
3 I’ll write some letters.
4 you get ready.
5 I won’t have much free time.
6 I come back?

111.1
2 If you pass the exam, you’ll get a certificate.
3 If you fail the exam, you can do it again.
4 If you don’t want this magazine, I’ll throw it away.
5 If you want those pictures, you can have them.
6 If you’re busy now, we can talk later.
7 If you’re hungry, we can have lunch now.
8 If you need money, I can lend you some.

111.2
2 I give
3 is
4 I’ll phone
5 I’ll be … get
6 Will you go … they invite

111.3
Example answers:
3 … the water is dirty.
4 … you’ll feel better in the morning.

111.4
Example answers:
2 you finish your work?
3 I’ll write some letters.
4 you get ready.
5 I won’t have much free time.
6 I come back?

112.1
3 wanted
4 had
5 was/were
6 didn’t enjoy
7 could
8 spoke
9 didn’t have

112.2
3 I’d go / I would go
4 she knew
5 we had
6 you won
7 I wouldn’t stay
8 we lived
9 It would be
10 the salary was/were
11 I wouldn’t know
12 would you change

112.3
3 I’d watch it / I would watch it
4 we had some pictures on the wall
5 the air would be cleaner
6 every day was/were the same
7 I’d be bored / I would be bored
8 we had a bigger house / we bought a bigger house
9 we would/could buy a bigger house

112.4
Example answers:
2 I’d go to Antarctica
3 I didn’t have any friends
4 I had enough money
5 I’d call the police
6 there were no guns

UNIT 113

113.1
2 A butcher is a person who sells meat.
3 A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
4 A patient is a person who is ill in hospital.
5 A dentist is a person who looks after your teeth.
6 A fool is a person who is very stupid.
7 A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
8 A liar is a person who doesn’t tell the truth.

113.2
2 The woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.
3 Most of the students who took the exam passed (it).
4 The policeman who stopped our car wasn’t very friendly.

113.3
2 who
3 which
4 which
5 who
6 which
7 who
8 which
9 which

that is also correct in all these sentences.

113.4
3 … a machine that/which makes coffee.
4 OK (which is also correct)
5 … people who/that never stop talking.
6 OK (who is also correct)
7 OK (that is also correct)
8 … the sentences that/which are wrong.
KEY TO EXERCISES

UNIT 114

114.1
2 I've lost the pen you gave me.
3 I like the jacket Sue is wearing.
4 Where are the flowers I gave you?
5 I didn't believe the story he told us.
6 How much were the oranges you bought?

114.2
2 The meal you cooked was excellent.

114.3
2 Who are the people you spoke to?
3 Did you find the keys you were looking for?
4 The house they live in is too small for them.
5 The map I looked at wasn't very clear.
6 I fell off the chair I was sitting on.

114.4
2 What's the name of the restaurant where you had dinner?
3 Do you like the village where you live?
4 How big is the factory where you work?

7 The bus we were waiting for was very late.
8 Who is the man Linda is dancing with?
Key to Additional exercises

1
3 Kate is a doctor.
4 The children are asleep.
5 Bill isn’t hungry.
6 The books aren’t on the table.
7 The hotel is near the station.
8 The bus isn’t full.

2
3 she’s/she is
4 Where are
5 Is he
6 It’s/It is
7 I’m/I am or
   No, I’m not. I’m a student.
8 What colour is
9 Is it
10 Are you
11 How much are

3
3 He’s/He is having a bath.
4 Are the children playing?
5 Is it raining?
6 They’re/They are coming now.
7 Why are you standing here? I’m/I am waiting for somebody.

4
3 Chris doesn’t want
5 Do you want
6 Does Ann live
7 Sarah knows
8 I don’t travel
9 do you usually get up
10 They don’t go out
11 Tim always finishes
12 does Jill do ... She works

5
3 She’s/She is a student.
4 She hasn’t got a car.
5 She goes out a lot.
6 She’s got / She has got a lot of friends.
7 She doesn’t like London.
8 She likes dancing.
9 She isn’t / She’s not interested in sport.

6
1 Are you married?
   Where do you live?
   Have you got / Do you have any children?
   How old is she?
2 How old are you?
   What do you do? / Where do you work? / What’s your job?
   Do you like/enjoy your job?
   Have you got / Do you have a car?
   Do you (usually) go to work by car?
3 What’s his name? / What’s he called?
   What does he do? / What’s his job?
   Does he live/work in London?

7
3 Sonia is 32 years old.
4 I’ve got / I have two sisters.
5 We often watch TV in the evening.
6 Ann never wears a hat.
7 A bicycle has got two wheels.
8 These flowers are beautiful.
9 Mary speaks German very well.

8
3 are you cooking?
4 plays
5 I’m going
6 It’s raining
7 I don’t watch
8 we’re looking
9 do you pronounce

9
2 we go
3 is shining
4 are you going
5 do you go
6 She writes
7 I never read
8 They’re watching
9 She’s talking
10 do you usually have
11 He’s visiting
12 I don’t drink

10
2 went
3 found
4 was
5 had
6 told
7 gave
8 were
9 thought
10 invited

11
3 He was good at sport.
4 He played football.
5 He didn’t work hard at school.
6 He had a lot of friends.
7 He didn’t have a bicycle.
8 He wasn’t a quiet child.

12
3 How long were you there? / How long did you stay there?
4 Did you like/enjoy Amsterdam?
5 Where did you stay?
6 Was the weather good?
7 When did you get/come back?

13
3 I forgot
4 did you get
5 I didn’t speak
6 Did you have
7 he didn’t go
8 she arrived
9 did Robert live
10 The meal didn’t cost

14
2 were working
3 opened
4 rang ... was cooking
5 heard ... looked
6 was looking ... happened
7 wasn’t reading ... was watching
8 didn’t read
9 finished ... paid ... left
10 saw ... was walking ... was waiting

[293]
KEY TO ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

15
3 is playing
4 gave
5 doesn't like
6 did your parents go
7 saw ... was driving
8 Do you watch
9 were you doing
10 goes
11 'm/am trying
12 didn't sleep

16
3 it's/it has just finished/ended.
4 I've/1 have found them.
5 I haven't read it.
6 Have you seen her?
7 I've/1 have had enough.
8 Have you (ever) been to Sweden?
9 We've/We have (just) been to the cinema.
10 They've/They have gone to a party.
11 He's/He has just woken up.
12 How long have you lived here?
13 We've/We have known each other for a long time.
14 It's/It has been raining all day.
or It has rained all day. or It has been horrible/bad all day.

17
3 has been
4 for
5 since
6 has he lived / has he been / has he been living
7 for
8 have been

18
Example answers:
3 I've just started this exercise.
4 I've met Julia a few times.
5 I haven't had dinner yet.
6 I've never been to Australia.
7 I've lived here since I was born.
8 I've lived here for three years.

19
3 bought
4 went
5 've/have read or 've/have finished with
6 haven't started (it) or haven't begun
7 was
8 didn't see
9 left
10 's/has been
11 was

20
3 He's/He has already gone.
4 she went at 4 o'clock.
5 How many times have you been there?
6 I haven't decided yet.
7 It was on the table last night.
8 I've just eaten.
9 What time did they arrive?

21
1 When was the last time? or When did you go the last time?
2 How long have you had it?
I bought it yesterday.
3 How long have you lived / have you been living there?
Before that we lived in Mill Road.
How long did you live in Mill Road?
4 How long have you worked / have you been working there?
What did you do before that?
I was a taxi driver, or I worked as a taxi driver.

22
Example answers:
2 I didn't go out last night.
3 I was at work yesterday afternoon.
4 I went to a party a few days ago.
5 It was my birthday last week.
6 I went to America last year.

23
2 B 5 A
3 D 6 D
4 A 7 C
8 B 12 C
9 C 13 B
10 D 14 C
11 A 15 A

24
1 was damaged ... be knocked down
2 was built ... is used ... is being painted
3 is called ... be called ... was changed
4 have been made ... are produced

25
2 is visited
3 were damaged
4 be built
5 is being cleaned
6 be forgotten
7 has already been done
8 be kept
9 Have you ever been bitten
10 was stolen

26
2 My car was stolen last week.
3 You're/You are wanted on the phone.
4 The bananas have been eaten.
5 The machine will be repaired.
6 We're/We are being watched.
7 The food has to be bought.

27
3 pushed
4 was pushed
5 has taken
6 is being repaired
7 invented
8 was the camera invented
9 did they send / have they sent
10 be sent

28
2 B 8 B
3 A 9 B
4 C 10 A
5 B 11 B
6 C 12 C
7 C
29
1 I stayed
did you do
I watched
Are you going
I'm going
are you going to see
I don't know. I haven't decided
2 have you been
We arrived
are you staying / are you going
to stay
do you like
we're having
3 I've just remembered — Jill
phoned
She always phones ... Did she
leave
she wants
I'll phone ... Do you know
I'll get
4 I'm going ... Do you want
are you going
Have you ever eaten
I've been ... I went
5 I've lost ... Have you seen
You were wearing ... I came
I'm not wearing
Have you looked / Did you
look
I'll go

30
2 A 11 B
3 B 12 A
4 C 13 C
5 B 14 B
6 C 15 C
7 B 16 A
8 A 17 C
9 C 18 B
10 A

31
2 a car
3 the fridge
4 a teacher
5 school
6 the cinema
7 a taxi
8 the piano
9 computers
10 the same

32
4 a horse
5 The sky
6 a tourist
7 for lunch (-)
8 the first President of the
United States
9 a watch
10 remember names (-)

33
2 in 12 at
3 on 13 at
4 at 14 in
5 on 15 at
6 in 16 on
7 since 17 by
8 on 18 for ... on
9 by 19 to ... in
10 in 20 at ... in

11 the next train
12 writes letters (-)
13 the garden
14 the Majestic Hotel
15 ill last week (-) ... to work (-)
16 the highest mountain in the
world
17 to the radio ... having breakfast
(-)
18 like sport (-) ... is basketball (-)
19 a doctor ... an art teacher
20 the second floor ... the top of
the stairs ... on the right
21 After dinner (-) ... watched
television (-)
22 a wonderful holiday in the
south of France (-)
Index

a/an 64
  a and some 66-67
  a/an and the 68
about 104E
above 102E
active and passive Appendix 1
across 103
adjectives 84
  adjectives and adverbs
    (quick/quickly) 85
  comparatives (older / more expensive) 86-88
  superlatives (the oldest / the most expensive) 89
  get + adjective (get tired etc,) 55B
  possessive adjectives (my/your/her etc.) 59, 61
  something/anything + adjective 78C
  adjectives + preposition (afraid of etc.) 105A
adverbs 85
  word order (always / usually /often etc.) 93
advise (advise somebody to ...) 52B
afraid (of) 105A
after 98, 110
ago 19B
all
  all and every etc. 79
  all (of) 80
  word order 93
along 103
already 94C
  already + present perfect 16B
  word order 93
also (word order) 93
always
  always + present simple 5C
  word order 93
am/is/are 1-2
  am/is/are -ing (present continuous) 3-4, 23A, 26, 50C
  was/were 10
  was/were -ing (past continuous) 13, 23A, 50C
  have/has been (present perfect) 15-18
  passive 21-22, Appendix 1
  will be 28
back
  come back / give back etc. (phrasal verbs) 107-108, Appendix 7
  back

be (infinitive of am/is/are)
  am/is/are 1-2
  am/is/are -ing (present continuous) 3-4, 23A, 26, 50C
  was/were 10
  was/were -ing (past continuous) 13, 23A, 50C
  have/has been (present perfect) 15-18
  passive 21-22, Appendix 1
  will be 28
because 109
been
  have/has been (present perfect) 15-18
  been and gone 17C
  there has/has been 37B
before 98, 110
begin (begin to ... or begin -ing) 51C
behind 102A
belong (to) 106A
below 102E
beside 102A
best 89B
better 86D
between 102A
bit (a bit older/big etc.) 87D
born 21C
both 81
  word order 93
but 109
by 104C
  by after the passive (I was bitten by a dog.) 21D
  by myself / by yourself etc. 62C
  by (= beside) 102C
can/can’t 31
comparative (older / more expensive etc.) 86-88
conditional (if ...)
  if I do ... 111
  if I did ... 112
conjunctions 109-112
  and / but / or / so / because 109
  when / before / while / after / until 110
  if 111-112
continue (continue to ... or continue -ing) 51C
can/can’t (short forms - I'm, it's, you're etc.) Appendix 4
could/couldn’t 31C-D
countable and uncountable nouns 66-67
depend (on) 106C
did
  didn’t in negatives 12, 23D, 39C, 42B, 50A
  did in questions 12, 23D, 39C, 43B, 50A
different (from) 105A
direct speech and reported speech 49
do 56
  don’t / doesn’t in negatives 6, 23D, 39C, 42B, 50A
  do / does in questions 7, 23D, 39C, 43B, 50A
down 103
  sit down / put down etc. (phrasal verbs) 107-108, Appendix 6-7
during 98

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).
INDEX

each other 62D

either
either and too 41A
either (of) 81

embedded questions (Do you know what ...? etc.) 48

end (at the end of) 96B, 99B

enjoy
enjoy -ing 51B
enjoy myself/yourself etc. 62A

enough 90

future 26—29

further 86D

from 97A, 103

for

for ten minutes / for three years etc. 19, 97D

for and to ... 53B

for a walk etc. 54C

for and during 98C

from 97A, 103

front (in front of) 102A—B

full (of) 105A

further 86B

future 26—29

I’m working tomorrow. (present continuous) 26

The concert starts at 7.30. (present simple) 26C

(I’m) going to (do something) 27

will 28—29

shall 28D, 29C

future after when/before/while etc. 110B

future after if 111B

give
give something to somebody / give somebody something 95
give up / give back etc. (phrasal verbs) 108, Appendix 6—7

go 54
go -ing (go swimming etc.) 54D
go home / go to work / go to the cinema 70
go in / go back etc. (phrasal verbs) 107

going to (I’m going to do something) 27

gone and been 17C
good
good and well 85D
good at 105A

got
past of get 11C, 55

have/has got 9, 57A

had

past of have 11C

had to 34B

He said he had (done something) 49, Appendix 1.1

happen (to) 106A

hard 85C

has see have

hate 51C—D

have 9, 57

have got / has got 9, 57A

have done / have been etc. (present perfect) 15—18, 23C

have to 34

there has/have been 37B

have breakfast / have a shower etc. 57B

her 58—59, 61

hers 60—61

herself 62

him 58, 61

himself 62

his 59—61

holiday (on holiday) 54B, 104A

home 54A, 70A, 101B

get home 55C, 101C

how 46

How long have you ...? (present perfect) 18

How big? / How old? / How far? etc. 46D

How long does it take? 47

How much? / How many? 82A

I / you / he / she etc. (personal pronouns) 58, 61

if 111—112

if we go / if we see etc. 111

if and when 111C

if I had / if we went 112

Do you know if ...? 48C

in

in April / in summer etc. 96

in a room / in hospital etc. 99—100

in five minutes / in three years etc. 96E

in and to 101

put something in 103

go in / fill in etc. (phrasal verbs) 107—108, Appendix 7

infinitive (do / see / play etc.)

infinitive (do / see etc.) and to

+ infinitive (to do / to see etc.) 50, 52

can / will / should etc. + infinitive 50A

verbs + to + infinitive (I want to go etc.) 50B, 51—52

infinitive and -ing (do / doing etc.) 50—51

I went to the shop to buy...

(infinitive for purpose) 53

infinitive and for ... 53B

adjective + infinitive (it’s easy to ... 38B

something to eat / nowhere to go etc. 78D

- ing (doing / playing / going etc.)

am / is / are + -ing (present continuous) 3—4, 23A, 26, 50C

was / were + -ing (past continuous) 13, 23A, 50C

- ing and infinitive (do / doing etc.) 50—51

verbs + -ing (enjoy -ing etc.) 51B—C

go -ing (go swimming etc.) 54D

prepositions + -ing 98D, 105B

interested (in) 105A

into 103

irregular verbs 11C, 24B, Appendix 2—3

is see am / is / are

it 38, 58B

it is and there is 36B, 38A

it’s and its 59C

its 59

just

just + present perfect 16A

word order 93

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).
INDEX

kind (kind to somebody / kind of somebody) 105A
know (Do you know where ...?) 48

learn (learn to ...) 51A
left (on the left) 102A
lend (lend something to somebody) 95
less 87C
let 52D
like (What is it like?) 45B
like (verb)
would like 35, 51D, 52A
do you like? and would you like? 35C
like to ... or like -ing 51C
listen (to) 106A
little / a little 83
look
look + adjective (look tired etc.) 84C
look at / for / after 106B
lot (a lot of ...) 82
love 51C–D

make 56
make somebody do something 52D
make and do 56
many
many and much 82
not as many (as) 88B
too many 91C
married
married to 105A
get married 55
may 30D
me / you / him etc. (personal pronouns) 58, 61
middle (in the middle of) 100A, 102A
might 30
mind (I don't mind -ing) 51B
mine / yours / hers etc. (possessive pronouns) 60–61
modal verbs (will / can / might etc.) 28–35, 50A
more 86C, 87
most
most (of) 80
the most expensive / the most difficult etc. 89
much
much and many 82
much bigger / much more expensive 87D
not as much (as) 88B
too much 91C
must 32
mustn't 32C
must and should 33E
must and have to 34D
my / your / his etc. (possessive adjectives) 59, 61
myself / yourself etc. (reflexive pronouns) 62
need
needn't 32D
need to ... 51A
negatives 42
negative questions 43C
no and none 76
not and any 76–77
neither
Neither am I / Neither do I etc. 41B
neither (of) 81
never
never + present simple 5C
never + present perfect 17
word order 93
next to 102A
nice (nice to somebody / nice of somebody) 105A
no (no money / no friends etc.) 76A–B, 80A
nobody / no-one / nothing 77–78
no-one and none 76C
none 76B–C, 80B–C
nor (Nor am I / Nor do I etc.) 41B
nouns (countable and uncountable) 66–67
nowhere 78

of
the roof of the building etc. 63C
the ... of ... 72E
off 103
get off / turn off etc. (phrasal verbs) 107–108, Appendix 6
offer (to do something) 51A
often
often + present simple 5C
word order 93
on
on Monday / on 25 April etc. 96
on the table / on the wall 99–100
on the left / right 102A
on holiday / on television etc. 104A
go on (holiday / a trip etc.) 54B
got on / put on etc. (phrasal verbs) 107–108, Appendix 6–7
one / ones 74
opposite 102B
or 109B
ought to 33F
our 59, 61
ours 60–61
ourselves 62
out
out of 103
go out / put out etc. (phrasal verbs) 107–108, Appendix 6–7
over 103
don't mind / knock over (phrasal verbs) 107–108, Appendix 6–7

pair (a pair of ...) 65B
passive 21–22, 23B, Appendix 1
present simple (is done) and past simple (was done) 21
present continuous (is being done) and present perfect (has been done) 22
will / can / must (etc.) be done
Appendix 1.2
past (preposition) 103
past continuous (was / were + -ing) 13–14, 23A, 50C
past continuous (I was doing) and past simple (I did) 14
past continuous passive
Appendix 1.1
past participle (cleaned / done / seen etc.) 24A
present perfect (I have cleaned) 15, 23C
past perfect (the room was cleaned) 21–22, 23B, Appendix 1
regular (cleaned) and irregular (seen) 24B, Appendix 2–3
past perfect
He said he had (done something) 49
active and passive Appendix 1.1
past simple (did / cleaned / saw etc.) 11–12
negative (didn't ...) 12, 42B
questions (did ... ?) 12, 43B
was / were 10
regular (cleaned) and irregular verbs (saw) 11C, Appendix 2–3
past simple + ago 19B
past simple (I did) and present perfect (I have done) 20
past simple (I did) and past continuous (I was doing) 14
past simple passive (the room was cleaned) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1
if + past simple (if I had / if we went) 112
people 65C–D
personal pronouns (I / me / you etc.) 58, 61

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).
The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).
INDEX

talk (to) 106A
tell/told
He told me that ... 49
Can you tell me where ...? 48A
He told me to ... 52B
tells/told
He told me that ... 49
Can you tell me where ...? 48A
He told me to ... 52B
tenses
active and passive Appendix 1.1
present continuous (I am doing) 3—4, 23A, 26, 50C
present simple (I do) 5—7, 23D, 26C
past simple (I did) 11—12, 14, 20, 23D
past continuous (I was doing) 13—14, 23A, 50C
present perfect (I have done) 15—20, 23C
he/have/do in present and past tenses 23
than 87—88
that 73
He said that ... (reported speech) 49C
that and this 73
a thing that ... (relative clauses) 113
the 68—72
the and a/an 68
the same 69B
the sun / the sky etc. 69C
the cinema / the theatre / the bank etc. 70B
flowers / the flowers 71B
the in names of places 72
the biggest / the most expensive etc. 89
their 59, 61
theirs 60, 61
them 58, 61
themselves 62
there
there is/are 36
there was/were 37A
there has/have been 37B
there will be 37C
there is and it is 36B
these 73
think (think about / think of) 106A
this 73
those 73
through 103

till (= until) 97B
to
time 97A
places 101, 103
go to ... 54A, 101A
got to ... 55C, 101C
to + infinitive (to go / to be etc.) see
infinitive
too 91
too and either 41A
turn (round / turn on etc.)
(phrase verbs) 107—108, Appendix 7
uncountable nouns
(salt / water / music etc.) 66—67
under 102D, 103
until 97A—B, 110B
up 103
get up / pick up etc. (phrase verbs) 107—108, Appendix 6—7
us 58, 61
used (I used to ...) 25
usually
usually + present simple 5C
word order 93
verbs
present tenses 1—9, 23, 26
past tenses 10—14, 20, 23
present perfect 15—20, 23
regular and irregular verbs 24, Appendix 1—2
future 26—29
modal verbs (will / can / should etc.) 28—35, 50A
negatives 42
questions 43—46
reported speech 49
verbs + -ing 50—51
verbs + to ... (infinitive) 50—52
verbs + preposition (look at / speak to etc.) 106
phrase verbs (get up / put on etc.) 107—108, Appendix 6—7
wait (for) 53C, 106A
want
want to ... 51A
want somebody to ... 52A
was/were 10
was/were + -ing (past continuous) 13, 23A, 50C
was/were done (passive) 21, 23B
there was/were 37A
if I was/were ... 112B
well 85D
were see was
what
What ... ? and Who ... ? 44C
What ... like? 45B
What ...? 46
What ...? and Which ... ? 46C
when 110
when and if 111C
which 48C
Who ... ? 44
a person who ... (relative clauses) 113
whose (Whose is this?) 60D
will 28—29
will and shall 28D, 29C
won't 28A
there will be 37C
with / without 104D
with / without + -ing 105B
won't (= will not) 28A
word order 43—45
questions 43—45
present continuous questions 4B
present simple questions 7B
past simple questions 12D
passive 21—22
Do you know where ...? (embedded questions) 48
verb + object 92A
place and time 92B
always / usually / often etc. 93
after give / lend / send etc. 95
worse 86D
worst 89B
would
I'd like / would you like? 35
would like / love / etc. 51D
He would buy a car if he had the money. 112
write (to) 106A
when 110
when and if 111C
which 48C
Who . . . ? 44
a person who . . . (relative clauses) 113
whose (Whose is this?) 60D
will 28—29
will and shall 28D, 29C
won't 28A
there will be 37C
with / without 104D
with / without + -ing 105B
won't (= will not) 28A
word order 43—45
questions 43—45
present continuous questions 4B
present simple questions 7B
past simple questions 12D
passive 21—22
Do you know where ...? (embedded questions) 48
verb + object 92A
place and time 92B
always / usually / often etc. 93
after give / lend / send etc. 95
worse 86D
worst 89B
would
I’d like / would you like? 35
would like / love / etc. 51D
He would buy a car if he had the money. 112
write (to) 106A
yet 94
yet + present perfect 16C
you 58, 61
your 59, 61
yours 60—61
yourself / yourselves 62

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).
Essential Grammar in Use
With answers - Second Edition

*Essential Grammar in Use* is a grammar reference and practice book for elementary learners. Modelled on Raymond Murphy's highly successful intermediate level *English Grammar in Use*, it concentrates on areas of grammar normally taught at elementary level.

- Easy to use: on each left-hand page a grammar point is explained and on the facing pages there are exercises to check understanding.
- Clear explanations: grammar for elementary learners is explained in simple language with many examples and attractive illustrations.
- Accessible: the clear contents list and index of grammatical items make it easy for learners to select the units they need to study.
- Additional exercises: these offer extra practice of grammar points from different units.
- Appendices: these useful references deal with tenses, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.
- Self-study: the book can be used by learners working independently or as supplementary course material.
- Key: this contains the answers to all exercises.

Also available: *Essential Grammar in Use Supplementary Exercises*  
Cambridge Essential English Dictionary  
*English Grammar in Use* Third Edition